

Socio-Economic Status of Households in Ywar Thit Kalay

Village: An Income Level Analysis

Daw Wai Wai Kyaw

Abstract

This paper is concerned with the socio-economic status of households in Ywar Thit Kalay Village. This is a island village which situated in Kyauktan Townships, Yangon Region. The objective of the paper is to examine the overall socio-economic status by level of income of peoples in the study area. The main objective is to find out the influence factors of household in this village. The economy of this village mainly based on agriculture. From the study, it was founded that the per capita income level of households was gap. So, in this research paper an attempt has been made to find out the actual socio-economic status of population of different income groups of this village. The entire study is based on primary data which have been collected by simple random sampling with a suitable questionnaire. All the data have been classified into six income groups and simple percentage method is followed to analyze the actual situation. In the study area, it found that 71.15% of total sample population's monthly per capita income is below Ks 100 thousands and only 0.96% population's monthly per capita income is above Ks 500 thousands. Only few percentages of people enjoy little better life where most of the people lie in subsistence situation.

KEY WORDS: Socio-economic status, income level, population, educational level, occupation composition.

1 Introduction

The current situation of the society in developing nations is rapidly moving from poor economy to develop economy with the development of social condition. But these changes are not equal to all places. Basically rural areas are very less developed as compared to urban areas in terms of social, culture and economic aspects. Lifestyle of an individual's are widely depended on their economic status. Hence, social position of the person is dominated by his/her income. No society or region can be developed with the exception of any part remaining lag behind. Proper socio-economic development can control the healthy and balanced growth of a region. Now a day, increasing not only educational level but also vocational education has been changing their income as well as the socio-economic status among the rural population.

Socio-economic characteristics are the important tools to the measures of human development. It is a measure of an individual's or family's or group of people's economic and social position based on education, income ,health and occupation. Socio-economic is the most important determinant of the livelihoods as it influences levels of knowledge, skill and income conditions which mean for their living .Peoples' way of living is differ from one

income group to another as their consumption power is also differ among income group of population. According to Dutton and Levin (1989), socio-economic status is “a composite measure that typically incorporates economic status, measure by income, social status, measured by education, and work status, and measured by occupation.

Socio-economic status is the foremost issue in the contemporary world, especially in the developing world. Socio-economic status in rural areas is gradually improving over a period of time. Many programmes and policies have been implemented to improve the socio-economic status of population in rural areas. But in economic sense, people of the rural areas could not develop equally over the region. Even within a small village, different types of economic classes are found.

Myanmar has embarked on an all-around national development programme by promoting the living standard of people aimed at achieving a peaceful, modern and developed nation since 1989. The government has been building infrastructure through systematic plans for all citizens to be able to enjoy a rich and secure socio-economic life and to possess a promising future. In implementing rural development activities, the state plays its role as policy maker, strategy planner, and supervisor. Rural development measures are being taken to implement these strategic plans by model village approach. So, in this paper, it attempts to study the socio-economic status of Ywar Thit kalay village and to find out the influence factors of households in this village.

1.1 Objectives of the study

The objectives of the study are as follows:

- To study the demographic conditions by level of income in the study area.
- To examine the overall socio-economic status by level of income in the study area.

1.2 Scope and Limitations of the study

This paper is focused on the households in Ywar Thit Kalay Village and collected data from 100 households out of 351 households.

1.3 Method of the study

The primary data based on survey under simple random sampling and key informant interview method (KII) and some data based on secondary data source such as using documents from the village's record. All the collected data were converted into relative

number such as percentage to observe the overall situation and divided all the sample population in six income groups on the basis of monthly per capita income to examine the socio-economic status of different income groups of population in the study area.

1.4 Organization of the study

The study consists of four chapters. Chapter -1 is introductory chapter including introduction, objectives, scope, method and organization of the study. Chapter-2 includes the historical background of the village- Location, Agricultural Condition, Transportation, Health Care Services, Social Services and Education Condition of the village. Chapter-3 is the analysis of Socio-Economic Status of the village by Per Capita Income of Households. Chapter-4 is the conclusion part which includes finding and suggestion.

2. Literature Review

Socioeconomic is an important of the livelihoods as it influences levels of knowledge, skill and income condition which mean for their living. People's way of living is differ from one income group to another as their consumption power is also differ among income group of population. According to Dutton and Levine(1989) socio-economic status is an economic and sociological combined total measure of a person's work experience and of family's economic and status is often considered a personal demographic variable; however , socio-economic status can also reflect aspects of an individual's broader environment. As a result, it can be measured at the individual level or the area level.

Historical Background of the Village

2.1 Profile of Ywar Thit Kalay Village

Ywar Thit Kalay, a village located at the south-east part in Kyauktan Township, Yangon Region. The total area of the village and farmlands are 3.46 square miles. There are 1920 population and 351 households in village, 2019. The economy of the village is predominately agriculture based. The road connectively of the village is very bad and there are only few small shops in the village. According to a study, it is known that all villagers are Burmese and they are Buddhism.

2.2 Economics Conditions of Ywar Thit Kalay village

The farmlands in Ywar Thit Kalay are silty loam soils, and paddy is mainly cultivated. In the dry season, some dry season crops (such as groundnuts, sunflower and cow-pea, pedisein)were grown on a limited scale. In the early days, paddy and groundnut were mostly

grown for economic purposes, but only paddy has been growing largely since the later of 1990 because of fertility topsoil decline and economic of scale. Rain-fed paddy remained the crop grown in the monsoon season (May – October), but in the dry season (November-April), green gram (Pedisein) was cultivated to the maximum in the farmlands. It is known that paddy is grown in November and gathered in April. Groundnut is marketed as the seeds, but not as the seedcases. Livestock and fishery are not farmed in the village. Most of the households earn on living by the agricultural farms.

2.3 Conditions of Communications

There are weak transportation services, the roads to the village were land street in village and other village. There is no public transportations. Therefore, villagers for cars, motorbikes, bicycle and people, and the roads in the village is very bad. Ywar Thit Kalay village is about 20 miles from kyauktan Township.

2.4 Conditions of Healthcare

There are two nurses in village clinic.

In the healthcare sector, there is the one rural health center, and one midwife and three nurses are in there. Moreover, there is also an ambulance for serious patients to go to hospital in time.

2.5 Conditions of Social Activities in Village

In the social sector, social security boards, co-operative societies, Red Cross. funeral services association and as well as are organized.

2.6 Condition of Education

The village has located a Basic Education Post-Primary School and currently 2018-2019 Academic year, the number of teacher is (10) and the number of students is (141). So, the number of primary level, middle level students by sex and the teacher student ratio in this village were shown in Table (2.1).

Table:2.1 Primary and Middle School Level Students by Sex and Teacher-Students Ratio in Ywar Thit Kalay Village

Education Level	Students		Total	Percentage	Teachers	Teacher-Student Ratio
	Male	Female				
Primary	28	28	56	40	5	1:11
Middle	46	39	85	60	5	1:17
Total	74	67	141	100	10	

Source: Survey Data (May 2019)

According to Table (2.1), forty percent of the students were at primary and sixty percent of the students were at middle level. The teacher-student ratio was found to be 1:11 at the primary level and 1:17 at the middle level.

3. Analysis of Socio- Economic Status of the Village

Socio-economic status refers to the position of individuals, families, households, or other aggregates on one or more dimensions of stratification. These dimensions include income, education, wealth, or other aspects of standing that member of society deem salient. Socio-economic status can also reflect aspects of an individual's broader environment. As a result, it can be measured at the individual level, the households' level or the area level. So, Socio-economic status of Ywar Thit Kalay Village was analyzed by the per capita income of households' levels as follow.

3.1 Household Size

According to Table (3.1), out of 100 households in this village, 31% of households had 4 family members, and 66% had 3 to 5 family members. The average family size was 4.38. Family life, depending on the number of family members, was closed as high level for the family with 1 to 3 members, as medium level, for the families with 4 to 6 members and as well as low level for families with 7 and above. Therefore, the household size was medium level in this village.

Table (3.1) Distribution of Household Size

Number of Household Members	Number of Households
2	12
3	23
4	31
5	12
6	16
7	5
8	1
Total	100

Source: Survey Data, 2019

3.2 Economically Active Members

Table (3.2) shows the economically active members in sample households. Most of the households had only one economically active member. The average economically active member was 1.94.

Table (3.2) Economically Active Members

Economically Active Members	No. of Households
1	44
2	30
3	15
4	10
5	1
Total	100

Source: Survey Data, 2019

3.3 Condition about Population Distribution by Level of Per Capita Income

The total population of 100 sample households is 416, among them, males occupied by 49.27% and rest of 50.73% is by females. In the study area, sex ratio is very low; there are only about 900 males and 1020 females observed. Table (3.3) depicts that among total 100 households, majority of them (67.00%) belongs to very low per capita income (below Ks

thousands 100), which contributes (71.15%) of total population, followed by (22.00 %) households belongs to very low per capita income Ks thousands 100-199, and share (20.19%) of total sample population, (7.00 %) of total sample households belongs to Ks thousands 200-299 per capita income and compose of (5.08%) of total population and only (2.00 %) of total sample households belongs to Ks thousands 300-399 per capita income and include (1.92%) of total sample population, and constitute (1.00 %) of total sample households lies under per capita income of Ks thousands 400-499 , which is (0.72 %) of total population and only (1 .00%) households of total sample households come under the per capita income of Ks thousands 500 and above which constitute (0.96%) of total sample population. So, as a result, the number of population is gradually decreasing with the increasing of per capita income of the population.

Table: 3.3 Population Distributions by Level of Per Capita Income

Per Capita Income (Ks thousands)	Households		Total Population		Male		Female	
	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%
< 100	67	67.00 %	296	71.15%	145	70.73%	151	71.56%
100 - 199	22	22.00 %	84	20.19%	43	20.96%	41	19.43%
200 - 299	7	7.00 %	21	5.08%	12	5.85%	9	4.26%
300- 399	2	2.00 %	8	1.92%	2	0.97%	6	2.84%
400 - 499	1	1.00 %	3	0.72%	1	0.48%	2	0.94%
>500	1	1 .00%	4	0.96%	2	0.97%	2	0.94%
Total	100	100%	416	100%	205	100%	211	100%

Source: Survey Data (May 2019)

3.4 Levels of Education by Level of Per Capita Income

Lifestyle of an individual's is purely dependent on the level of education. The low literacy levels have negative impacts on individuals (such as children, youth, adults and seniors), health and well-being, community participation, training, labor force, employment, productivity, and economic development. So, table: 3.4 reflect that in below Ks thousands 100 income group, maximum literate persons are middle school level educated (22.63%) and primary level educated (56.08%), followed by high school level (9.45%), graduate level (4.39%), and then the others (7.43%) of education . In Ks thousand 100-199 per capita income , the share of literate persons are as follows: (55.95%) are primary educated, (25.00%) are middle school level educated, (8.33%) are high school level educated, (7.14%) are graduates and (3.57%) are educated other education level. Between in Ks thousands 200-299 per capita income group, most of literate peoples are primary school level educated (42.86%), followed

by middle level is (28.57%) and high school level and graduate level educated (14.29%) and other level (0%) of education. Between Ks thousands 300-399 per capita income group literate peoples are distributed by primary (37.50%), middle school level (12.50%) and high school level (0%), followed by graduate level (50.00%) of education, other level (0%) of education.. In Ks thousand 400-499 per capita income group, most of literate peoples are only primary level (33.33%) and middle level and high school level (0%) of education, graduate level (66.67%) and other level (0%) of education And Ks thousand 500 and above income groups literate persons are constitute by primary level is (25.00%) and each high and graduate level are only (25.00%) of education, other level (25.00%) of education. So, as a result, it was found that the per capita income level of this village is depend on education of there.

Table: 3.4 Levels of Education by Level of Per Capita Income

Per Capita Income (thousands Ks)	Level of Education				
	Primary	Middle	High School	Graduate	Others
< 100	56.08%	22.63%	9.45%	4.39%	7.43%
100- 199	55.95%	25.00%	8.33%	7.14%	3.57%
200 - 299	42.86%	28.57%	14.29%	14.29%	0%
300 - 399	37.50%	12.50%	0%	50.00%	0%
400 - 499	33.33%	0%	0%	66.67%	0%
>500	0%	0%	50.00%	25.00%	25.00%

Source: Survey Data (May 2019)

3.5 Occupation Status of households by Per Capita Income Level

The occupation of an individual refers to his trade, profession, type of work etc. The occupation structure of a society is the product of a number of intimately related factors. Occupation is a major factor to determine the economic status of an individual, as different type of occupation reflects different incomes. In the study area most people are actively engaged in day labors such as casual, bricklayer, carry- motorbike. In spite of it, many of them are also engaged in other occupations like, cultivation, business, service and other, etc. Among below Ks thousands 100 income group of people are engaged (38.84%) in agricultural fields, (8.26%) in own business such as home shop, day labor (45.45%) in agriculture fields, private sector and other service, (5.79%) in service sector and (1.65%) in other sector such as foreign. Between Ks thousands 100-199 income populations are engaged as cultivators (31.25%), business (2.08%), day labors (47.92%), services (14.58%) and other (4.17%).

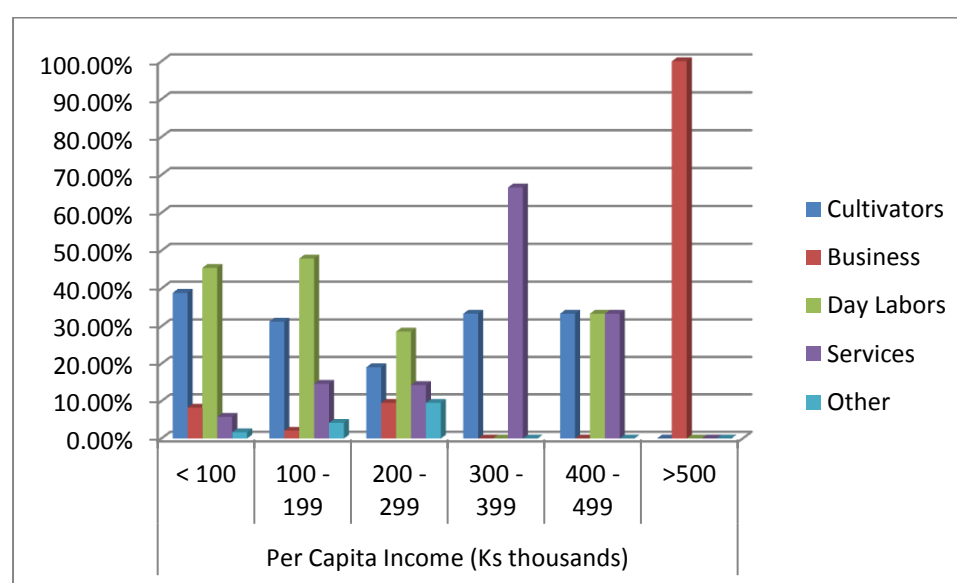
Among Ks thousands 200-299 income population's major occupation is cultivators (19.04%), business (9.25%), day labors (28.57%), followed by services (14.28%) and remain (9.52%) engaged in other sectors. In Ks thousands 300-399 income population are engaged (33.33%) in cultivators and (66.67%) in services , business, day labors, others are each (0%). Between Ks thousands 400-499 income population's major occupation is cultivators (33.33%), day labors and services are each (33.33%). And Ks thousands 500 and above income populations are actively engaged in business (100%). They are mainly engaged in day labours such as causal, carry- motorbike,. So, their livelihoods are mainly depending on the vocational training than the education.

Table: 3.5 Occupation Compositions by Level of Per Capita Income

Occupation	Per Capita Income (Ks thousands)					
	< 100	100 - 199	200 - 299	300 - 399	400 - 499	>500
Cultivators	38.84%	31.25%	19.04%	33.33%	33.33%	0%
Business	8.26%	2.08%	9.52%	0%	0%	100%
Day Labors	45.45%	47.92%	28.57%	0%	33.33%	0%
Services	5.79%	14.58%	14.28%	66.67%	33.33%	0%
Other	1.65%	4.17%	9.52%	0%	0%	0%
Total	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%

Source: Survey Data (May 2019)

Figure: 3.1 Occupation Compositions by Level of Per Capita Income



Source: Base on Table: 3.

3.6 Housing Condition by Per Capita Income Level

In rural areas, different types of house are found pacca house, brick house, wooden house and bamboo house. Although the income level is different within the households, types of house are found different. Among below Ks thousands 100 income groups of people, wooden house (68.66%) of houses is mostly found in the study area, followed by bamboo house (19.40%), brick house (11.94%) and pacca house (0%) is found in that income group of peoples (Table:3.6). Among income groups of Ks thousands 100-199, wooden house (57.14%) of houses is mostly found, followed by type of bamboo house (33.33%), brick house (9.52%) and then remain (0%) pacca house is found. Among Ks thousands 200-299 income level, also are mostly found wooden house (71.43%), followed by brick house (14.29%) and bamboo house (14.29%) is found but no pacca house is found in that income level. Among Ks thousands 300-399 income level, brick house and wooden house (50%) are mostly found. Among Ks thousands 400-499 and above Ks thousands 500 income groups, 100% people have brick house and wooden house. So, although high income level, they are stay as traditional rural types. As a result, among all sample household, only this group of people's enjoy a little better lifestyle.

Table: 3.6 Types of Houses by Level of Per Capita Income

Types of Houses	Per capita Income (Ks thousands)					
	< 100	100 - 199	200 - 299	300 - 399	400 - 499	>500
Pacca House	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%
Brick House	11.94%	9.52%	14.29%	50%	0%	100%
Wooden House	68.66%	57.14%	71.43%	50%	100%	%
Bamboo House	19.40%	33.33%	14.29%	%	0%	0%

Source: Survey Data (May 2019)

3.7 Availability of Electricity and Types of Cooking Fuel by Per Capita Income

According to the study, all people are getting facility of electricity in the village as shown in Table: 3.7. So, they are used to electrical machine as cooking fuel as shown in Table: 3.6. As a result, it found that their lifestyle is better about getting electricity.

Table: 3.7 Availability of Electricity by Per Capita Income

Electrified Houses	Per capita Income (Ks thousands)					
	< 100	100 - 199	200 - 299	300 - 399	400 - 499	>500
Electricity	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
No Electricity	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%

Source: Survey Data (May 2019)

Table: 3.8 Types of Cooking Fuel by Per Capita Income

Types of Fuel	Per capita Income (Ks thousands)					
	< 100	100 - 199	200 - 299	300 - 399	400 - 499	>500
Electricity	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
Firewood	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%
Coal	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%

Source: Survey Data (May 2019)

3.7 Types of Latrine by Level of Per Capita Income

Lack of proper sanitation is the major concern in rural areas. Proper sanitation is most important for a healthy life. But lack of finance and awareness of many rural population in developing country, very small people are getting facilitated of latrine. But, in the study area, as the village is an island, almost the houses is used only the flush latrine although inequality of per capita income level. When it is flooded, all the houses are used the above flush latrine on their house. In the study area, uses of latrine are as shown in Table; 3.9. In Table; 3.9, among below Ks thousands 100 per capita incomes population, very few have pit latrine (10.44%) and remaining (89.60%) population are used the flush latrine. Remaining levels are Ks thousands (100-199), (200-299), (300-399), (400-499) and above 500 incomes population are used the entire flush latrine (100%).

Table: 3.9 Types of Latrine by Level of Per Capita Income

Types of Latrine	Per capita Income (Ks thousands)					
	< 100	100 - 199	200 - 299	300 - 399	400 - 499	>500
Flush Latrine	89.60%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
Pit Latrine	10.40%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%
No Latrine	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%

Source: Survey Data (May 2019)

3.8 Condition of non-drinking Water use by Level of Per Capita Income

In the study area, although the village is an alluvial (island) area in Yangon River, all household is used the water from lake as shown in table: 3.10. And in table:3.11 among below Ks thousands 100, 100-199, 200-299, 300-399, 400-499 and above 500 all households are drink only the lake water.

Table: 3.10 Source of non-drinking Water use by Level of Per Capita Income

Source of Water	Per capita Income (Ks thousands)					
	< 100	100 - 199	200 - 299	300 - 399	400 - 499	>500
Well	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%
Tube Well	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%
Lake Water	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
River/Stream Water	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%
Other	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%

Source: Survey Data (May 2019)

Table: 3.11 Source of Drinking Water use by Level of Per Capita Income

Source of Water	Per capita Income (Ks thousands)					
	< 100	100 - 199	200 - 299	300 - 399	400 - 499	>500
Purified Water	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%
Tube Well	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%
Well	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%
Lake Water	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
River/Stream Water	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%
Other	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%	0%

Source: Survey Data (May 2019)

3.9 Savings Condition of Households by Level of Per Capita Income

According to Harrod – Domar Growth model, everybody must be save the fixed proportion of income to repair of fixed assets and fulfill of future needs for their life. But, as saving is surplus earning, the lower income population cannot save their income because management of three times eat per day and cloths is challengeable task within this income. But, in the study area, the most saving of people is the saving of microfinance to variety loan. Addition, saving of few people is the deposit account at bank from earning by selling land. So, the condition of saving of the villager by level of per capita income is shown in Table: 3.12.

Among below Ks thousands 100 income population is save (74.63%) and (25.37%) is not save people, between Ks thousands 100-199 income level of population is save (76.19%) and (23.80%) no save. And then among Ks thousands 200-299 income population is save (57.14%) of people and not save people (42.86%). Between Ks thousands 300-399 income people have saving (100%) but not saving (0%). All people of Ks thousands 400-499 per capita income level have saving (0%)but no saving (100%), that I think this saving from earning by sell land. Remaning people of per capita income level are the above Ks thousands 500 is not save from their income.

Table: 3.12 Savings by Level of Per Capita Income

Saving Status	Per capita Income (Ks)					
	< 100	100 - 199	200 - 299	300 - 399	400 - 499	>500
Savings	74.63%	76.19%	57.14%	100%	0%	0%
No Savings	25.37%	23.80%	42.86%	0%	100%	100%

Source: Survey Data (May 2019)

4. Conclusion

According to studying this village, although Ywar Thit Kalay Village is an alluvial (island) area in River, it has flooded only in the three months of a year- July, August and September. So, people in the village are stay as well as other village which is land village in remaining months. But, it is cultivated only one crop such as groundnut in a year and is planted other vegetables such as water green, sour green, mustard, basil, and so on in remaining months for covering the cost of kitchen. Moreover, it found that it is also a village in a rich heritage of handicrafts although economic condition of this village is depended on agriculture. The village have not suitable the condition of public goods such as infrastructure; streets, school, healthcare services, transportation to towards for a model village. Therefore, according to the study of socio-economic status of households by per capita income level in the village, only few people enjoy little better life where most of the people lie in subsistence situation.

4.1 Finding

The above analysis indicates that overall socio-economic status of population in the village is less good. 71.15% of total sample population's monthly income is below Ks thousands 100 and only 0.72% population's monthly per capita income is above Ks 400 and 500 thousands. The percentage of female population (71.56%) is more than the percentage of

male population (70.73%). Although there are nearly located from urban, education level is low and this is not difference among population by per capita income level. According to study, the occupation composition of sample households is mainly focus on cultivators. Most and about all of households by per capita income level are mainly earning from the sector of agriculture for their income. Their income is earning from cultivation below Ks thousands 100 income level. Most types of house of sample households are found a lot of wooden house although per capita income level is difference among them. All people are getting facility of electricity in the village. So, they are used to electrical machine for cooking fuel and other housing facilities. Almost households are used only the flush latrine although inequality of per capita income level. Although the village is an alluvial (island) area, all households are used the water from tube well and it is drink almost the purified drinking water. According to study, it found that the most people are saved in microfinance to variety loan. The saving of few people is the deposit account at bank from earning by business. So, as all of households are fairly getting many facilities like electricity, safe drinking water, proper sanitations etc, the socio-economic status of households are fairly take in accordance with the village level. But there are no good at the education level.

4.2 Suggestions

Following are the few suggestions for the improvement of socio-economic condition of population of the village:

- To improve the education status of the people in the study area by set up new primary and secondary schools.
- To provide primary health care services and creates awareness about health among the villagers.
- To increase economically active members of each household.
- To reduce the household size in families.
- To increase subsidies for various activities especially agriculture land, social services and credit.
- To paid the knowledge about saving to need for their future.
- To provide SME loans to the villager to run various small cottage industrial (handicraft) activities.
- To introduce various schemes for people of lower per capita income level to increase the subsistence level.
- Job oriented programmes such as employment, youth population and vocational training should be implemented.

Acknowledgement

I would like to express our respect and special thanks to Dr. Yi Yi Win, Rector of Co – operative University, Thanlyin for her kind encouragement and support to develop and process of this paper. And my special thanks to U Oo Tin Thein, Pro-Rector of Administrative and Daw Myint Myint Sein, Pro-rector of Academics of Co-operative University, Thanlyin for their kind encouragement to write this paper. I am also indebted my Associate Professor Daw Nyein Nyein Ei, Head of Department of Economics and then I am especially indebted to our friends and my eldest sister in department and my pupils for their kindly support and encouragement within the study period.

Finally, I deeply thanks to U Khaing Win, Administer of village and respondents, villagers who helped us by giving their time and efforts for personal interviews for this paper. I would like to deeply thank to all who deserve thanks for this research paper.

References;

1. Ywar Thit Ka Lay Village's record
2. See discussions, stats, and author profiles for this publication at: <https://www.researchgate.net/publication/281375205>, Article in Asian Academic Research Journal of Multidisciplinary. January 2014
3. <https://www.en.m.wikipedia.org>.social-economic status
4. <https://en.m.wikipedia.org/wiki>. Socio...Socioeconomic-Wikipedia

Effect of microfinance on household client's income in Zee Pyu Pin Village

Thet Nu Htwe

Abstract

The paper examines the effect of microfinance on income generation and job creation in households. The study primarily based on the field survey conducted by the microfinance program leadership in village. The present study finds out that the microfinance enterprises can certainly help the households in the study area solve some economic problems. The working period of the microfinance program is three year. The maximum investment is discovered in the income raising business. There is not difficulty between the owners and borrower of the loan as the low income families actually apply the loan and give it back regularly. However, only the microfinance activities can not make the households develop the socio-economic status at the local resident. The result suggests that, head of education level, head of age, members of workers in households, professional skill, ownerships of farm has positively related to households income. Monitoring of the group activities and providing suitable training facility to critical to materialize the benefits of microfinance. It is necessary to establish vocational training schools for getting regular income, to cultivate crops efficiently with the minimum expense, to create opportunities to set up investment and infrastructure of industrial sector.

Keywords : clients, household income, regional employment

Introduction

Microfinance is widely seen as a key development tool to promote financial inclusion and alleviation poverty in Myanmar. While cooperation has existed in country since the early 20th century, microfinance was first introduced to Myanmar in 1997 by UNDP's Human Development Initiative. In November 2011, the government passed the new Microfinance law, paving the way for expansion of microfinance services by allowing local and foreign investors to establish wholly privately owned MFIs in country. In Myanmar, most rural households find it difficult to finance their farming operations, including their other income-generating activities, owing to their limited savings. Therefore, in order to adopt relevant technologies and improve their farm productivity and income, the households need assistance in the form of production loans. The formal financial institutions in Myanmar (which are governmental financial institutions) are under the control of the Central Bank, and borrowers need to have assets or properties to get a loan from them. Consequently, the

poor people in Myanmar are forced to avail credit facilities from certain rich people, brokers, and traders, who charged high interest rates. A microfinance program is a type of loan assistance provided to economically vulnerable people to augment their household income by increasing investments in their enterprises, farming, and other income-generating activities. Many research findings in the literature are related to this study.

Microfinance is an organization that offers financial services to low income populations. The term microfinance institution has come to refer to a wide range of organizations dedicated to providing these services, For example, NGOs, credit unions, cooperatives, private commercial banks and non-bank financial institutions and parts of stat-owned banks. NGOs and other non-bank financial institutions have led the way in developing workable credit methodologies for the poor and reaching out large numbers of them. They have shown that the poor repay their loans and are willing and able to pay interest rates that cover the costs of providing the loans. Moreover, financial services for the poor have proved to be a powerful instrument for poverty alleviation, as they enable the poor to build assets, increase incomes and reduce their vulnerability to economic stress. The microfinance concept and MFIs thus ought to contribute to sustainable economic development by increasing not only short-term consumption levels and saving, but also education self-employment and new business (Morduch 1999)

This paper examined the improve on income and employment on household clients with microfinance program by using the socioeconomic indicators such as age, gender, education, and the value of household assets, they did not estimate the indicators that are important to increase household income. That's why, conducted two objectives on this paper. This study aimed (i) to describe the relationship between microfinance and employment and income, expenditure of the household clients (ii) to analyse the effect of regional employment on household income through microfinance.

Research Methodology

Study area

The study is carried out in Zee Phyu Pin village, Kayan Township. Zee Phyu Pin Village is (15) miles from Khayan Township. The village is located at the end of the other villages and it is quite near the Mottama. The length of the village is (3,700)

feet and width of the village is (1,400) feet. The village has total land area of (1,530) acres and (560) households, male (1,800) and female (2,100) relying on agriculture. They cultivate summer crops and winter crops, ground nuts, watermelons, tomatoes, pumpkins and monsoon crops. **The rain season crops tend the growth rice.** The farm has pigs, chicken, cows, goats and ducks. The major business is agriculture and farming. The percentage of households processing 5 acres -10 acres is commonly found in the village. Therefore, there is the average farm possession. There is one primary education school and one high education school.

Survey design

In Jun 2019, a survey is conducted in Zee Phyu Pin Village covering 69 households. Two strata of respondents were identified—those taking microfinance (clients). The research used cross-sectional descriptive study and applied both quantitative and qualitative methods. The study is forced in client people from microfinance in Zee Phyu Pin Village and how they use the microfinance loans to get sustainable development. The study used survey method to collect primary data from client in Zee Phyu Pin Village. The questionnaire is made up of both open-ended and closed-ended question multiple-choice answers, 69 responses are collected from the clients. The questionnaire also covered data on the household demographic and socioeconomic characteristics, such as age, household size, gender, assets, income, expenditure, number of crops, and establishing new businesses. For village information, the data are collected through the president of the village and members of the village committee, and for program information, the data are collected by interviewing. The population of the study is the clients of Zee Phyu Pin Village. There are almost 300 clients in these village according to answer of microfinance leader at fill now 2019, July. Among them, the necessary data was collected from a sample of clients (20% of the population). This study expected the microfinance loans affect the clients saving, income generation, growth of business and quality of life.

Literature Review

Microfinance, according to Otero (1999, p.8) is “the provision of financial services to low-income poor and very poor self-employed people”. These financial services according to Ledgerwood (1999) generally include savings and credit but can also include other financial services such as insurance and payment services. Schreiner and

Colombet (2001, p.339) define microfinance as “the attempt to improve access to small deposits and small loans for poor households neglected by banks.” Therefore, microfinance involves the provision of financial services such as savings, loans and insurance to poor people living in both urban and rural settings who are unable to obtain such services from the formal.

What is Microfinance?

Microfinance is a form of financial development that has primarily focused on alleviating poverty through providing financial services to the poor. Most people think of microfinance, if at all, as being about micro-credit i.e, lending small amounts of money to the poor. Microfinance is not only this, but it also has a broader perspective which also includes insurance, transactional services, and importantly, savings.

According to James Roth, “Microfinance is a bit of a catch all-term. Very broadly, it refers to the provision of financial products targeted at low-income groups. These financial services include credit, savings and insurance products. A service of neologisms has emerged from the provision of these services, name micro-credit, micro-savings and micro-insurance”.

The Canadian International Development Agency (CIDA) defines microfinance as, “the provision of a broad range of financial services to poor, low income households and micro-enterprises usually lacking access to formal financial institutions”.

The Grameen Model

In most developing countries, policies for rural financial development have been based on three erroneous beliefs concerning their target groups : 1. Rural micro-entrepreneurs are unable to recognize themselves, 2. They are too to save ; and 3. They need cheap credit for their income-generating activities or small enterprises.

Three financial policies have resulted from these conjectures. Firstly, the credit-oriented development banks and special programs were set up which ignored savings mobilization. Secondly, credit was subsidized, and lastly generous credit guarantee schemes were set up to cover the anticipated losses. The consequences of these policies contributed neither to the self-sustained growth of rural finance, nor did they sufficiently benefit the rural poor.

For commercial reasons financial service historically have been targeted to the rich section of the society, which have a greater capability to repay loans and preserve their savings. However, the poor community generally remained either un-served or

were offered improper financial services from conventional financial institutions. Banks and other formal financial institutions are currently estimated to provide services to only 25% of potential clients worldwide. Statistics indicate that apparently only 2% of micro-entrepreneurs are being provided service by banks (Women's Banking, 1994).

To overcome these obstacles, a prominent economist and professor from Bangladesh Muhammad Yunus in 1976, came up with a new concept and model, which is called, "The Grameen Model". During a field trip to a relatively poor village in Bangladesh with his students in 1974, Muhammad Yunus interviewed a woman who had a small business of making bamboo benches. Due to the shortage of the resources to purchase the raw materials, she was forced to borrow small amounts of money from a local lender. Without any collateral, she could only borrow enough money to buy the raw materials to build one piece at a time. The women had to repay the lender with high interest rates. Sometimes the interest rate of that loan exceeded 10% of the principle amount. After repaying the lender, the woman was left with a profit margin that was not enough even to meet her basic daily needs. Had she had access to more complimentary terms for her loan, she would have been able to save enough money to protect her from future uncertainties and in the long run, would have been able to raise herself above the survival level. Discouraged by what he saw, Dr. Yunus took matters into his own hands and lent a small amount of money as a loan to some 42 rural basket-weavers. He found that these small loans went a long way, and almost everyone who had borrowed the money, were keen to repay their loans. Dr. Yunus found out that even with this tiny amount of money it is possible not only to help the poor to survive but also to create the spark of personal initiative and enterprise in the people, necessary to pull themselves out of poverty.

Impacts of microfinance on current situation in village

Location

Building concrete road from Khayan Township to Zee Phyu Pin Village took three years. Microfinance associations were implemented due to the convenient roads. The trade flow was due to the ferry and boats, however, the trade flow is now depending on the transportation on roads and streets. Concerning with the trading goods, products and materials, the dealers from the urban areas buy the farming products like rice and beans. In addition, the food and other connected commodities

prices are high since the products are not easily acceptable. The goods and products concerning with food in this village have higher prices than other villages which are quite near the urban area. The villagers in this village do not spend quite much amount of money on food. They can even earn their income by selling marine products as it is very near the sea. The villagers have the basic food. **Thus, it does not have many difficulties as there are small amount expenditure and may earn the revenue from the produce of the region, compared to the urban region**

Agriculture

According to the present study, the villagers in Zee Phyu Pin Village possess the much less areas of field as every households possesses 5-10 acres of land to cultivate. Some households in other villages own 50-60 acres of farmland, whereas, some do not have any acre of land for agriculture. Households clients in the survey area mostly do the agricultural work. They suffer from the low income of agricultural products from covering the fields with sea water. **It is seen that households working for the agriculture suffer the effects of the high cost of production.** Moreover, they have the burden of prices including 3% of interest rate for loan which is taken to purchase the raw materials like nutrients for land, pesticides, insecticides and promoting fruits for the sales representatives in Khayan Township. The price of crops can decreasing during the harvest. The farmers have to sell their product with this decreased price because they had borrowed the loan with high interest rate and in order not to pay the considerable amount of money, they sell the loan givers with low price at the harvest time. The cost of production is almost equal to the profit during the harvest. As a result, they do not earn as high as those who do not borrow money. The residents do not have much extra money so, they cannot do other investment. They have more and more loans. The housewives also use the income of the fields run by the breadwinner of the households. Therefore they do not have much convenient financial situation for the families.

During the three years, the farmers can access the low interest loan from the microfinance and they can wait to catch up the period when they can sell their products with high prices, and they can have convenient finance. The households have much loan and they have to repay the debt with their extra money within two-year period. Therefore, there are not many changes in the village. The house wives can run the small business like farming with the loan.

They sell fish paste and dry fish because they live near Mottamma Sea. Some buy products from the town and sell them again in the village. Therefore, the housewives can have their own business. There can be less number of dependers in the households.

Households which do not possess the field had to borrow money from the field owners for the working fees, and they took the reduced fees and they did not have enough income. The farm worker was exploited before the MFI loan program. Currently, they can take the loan from microfinance organization and have extra money by selling the crops during the period when the products are sold with high price.

Leadership

There is the woman leaders in the village where the microfinance is providing the services. The emergence of difficulty in the microfinance services depends on the leaders of the village. When the microfinance organization enters the village, the clients and repayment of loan problems can occur. If the loan is spent as the non-profit expenditure instead of spending on self-employment, there can be burden on the loan. If there is the loan circle by repaying the first debt with the second debt from the another organization, there can be also bad economic situation.

In order to prevent these bad situation the woman leader need to analyze the actual utilization, monitor and guide with the help of organization and households. If the households take care of their profits themselves, there will certainly be problems for clients. If they contribute to the poor households with the spirit of voluntary, they can create good results for the households of clients, and organization. The women leader Zee Phyu Pin Village analyze the actual income increasing business and guide to the right way. As a result, the microfinance organizations as well as clients are making good progress.

Purpose of Loan

No.	Purpose of loan	Frequency		Percentage	
		Yes	No	Yes	No
1	Farm Investment	40	29	58	42
2	Education	7	62	10	90
3	Luxuries goods	-	69	-	100
4	General Expenses	4	65	6	94
5	Purchases Farm	3	66	4	96
6	Livestock	9	90	13	87
7	Business Investment	16	53	23	77

As table portrays, as the major business of the village is agriculture. The maximum rate of investment for field by microfinance is 58%. Most of the villagers use the loans in from investment because of the nature of economics in this region. The major business in this region is agriculture. The farmer have to purchase the inputs that use in farm as physical capital. It is characterized as a variable cost in agriculture. The inputs such as fertilizer, pesticide, insecticide are necessary to improve the farms' productivity. But the input cost are so high and MFI loan may cover the cost by lower interest rates and enough time to make repayment. Another element is that there are three type of social classes in agricultural production. They are farm workers, lower-class farmer, higher class farmer, landlords. According to the data, lower class farmer (the farmer who possess lower physical and financial capital), and higher class farmer (the famer who higher physical and financial capital, they can hire farm work for growing and they can also produce surplus value) can be assumed as the major social classes in this village. To summarize, the facts that agriculture is the major business that create the income and there have the social classes that can utilize the returns on capital in farming are the main reasons for using the loans in farms.

The loan to invest for small enterprises is 23%. Some of the villagers employ the loans in running their small business. After the agriculture, small enterprises are the second major businesses that can generate the villagers' income. By exploiting raw material available in the region, they can raise their current income and can often earn profit. They can gain the profit by commercializing the goods that are in short supply in the village. By investing their loans in small enterprises, the revenue can be

generated rapidly because the market demands for commodities (especially the necessitated goods) are available in this region.

Loan for livestock is 13%. The loans should be used in livestock sector because this sector can enhance their rate of productivity and raise their income by complementing with agricultural sectors. The input materials provided by agriculture can efficiently be utilized in livestock. This can save the cost of food because the produce from the livestock can fulfill the necessitate supply of food. Livestock sector not only can raise but also provide the food security and other value added food commodities.

The loan for education is 10%. The MFI's loan can make the improvement of their business. They can earn some of the income. The income earned by doing business should be spent on as an educational expenditure. In the long-run, Short of the number of literates lead to the wrong ways in decision making process that is concerned with market, prices, investment and misunderstanding the contract. It can push them deep level of poverty.

Due to the lack of electricity, the villagers cannot afford to use luxuries goods. The support of government for infrastructure was not quite enough. Before microfinance, the villages have electricity. The number of households() which do not afford the electric bill do not have the electricity. The households can set electricity usage metre box with the help of microfinance and with the extra money from the other business. Due to the access of electricity, the households can have drinking water from the lake in the village with pipes and motors. There is lack of technology.

The water in the lake is not clear as the villagers carry water with duckets, and the water is not purified to be drunk. The use of electricity is not enough and the advance use of technology is also not enough too. Due to the less use of electricity, the chance of getting experience, general knowledge and job opportunities is also low. There can be some weakness for the sustainable development.

The loan are mostly spent for income raised business. The residents who do not possess any field should rather take loan of 6% for household expenditure. The data show that the percentage of unemployed people are less 4% of loan is taken for buying farmland, and the extension of agriculture is weak in performance.

Growth of households after loan

This paper reveals that due to the microfinance loan, there are the great advantages and progress in educational expenses, vocational investment local business and number of business.

In order to develop human resources, education programs play a vital role. After taking loan, according to the survey research the socioeconomic status in terms of education is said to be developed. Another important goal of MFIs is to spread the light of education throughout the society. Development through this program indicates human development among the people. Their goals are to expand education opportunities for disadvantaged children with necessary technical and financial support.

According to the survey data of the research paper, after taking loans, the villagers have progress in mechanical repair. They took 67% for repairing vehicles for field, motorbike repairing, gold smith, mason, construction workers, dealers and mechanic.

The data also point out that the depending family members can run their small business thanks to the microfinance. They can earn from doing other business apart from the income of their family members. But there is one problem that can arise on growing the number of businesses. In spite of the growing the number of business, there does not increase the income of the people in the region. Because the production function is characterized as in the form of subsistence. Overall surplus value are consumed after investing the capital amount needed to run the business. They borrow the loan from MFI and invest them in their small enterprise. The commodities are either manufactured in production or purchased from another place. Earning the revenue, they might purchase the commodities needed for their households. This means that surplus value is consumed after purchasing in the form of physical capital needed for their business.

Microfinance programs target both economic and social poverty. To access the success of their effects microfinance institutions need to measure the impact in the borrowers. According to this paper, because of the loan from MFI, the educational cost, vocational investment, the number of business get improved.

Factor Influencing or the Determinants of Household Income

Coefficients^a

Model	Unstandardized Coefficients		Standardized Coefficients	t	Sig.
	B	Std. Error	Beta		
1 (Constant)	-4067554.450	1954374.165		-2.081	.042
Head of Education level	898461.991	449341.196	.164	2.000	.050
Head of Age	1032352.467	389392.965	.220	2.651	.010
Number of Workers in each households	1943226.528	276814.701	.582	7.020	.000
Head of Gender	-236112.276	1302068.539	-.015	-.181	.857
Types of Head Jobs	84484.336	92645.423	.091	.912	.365
Ownership of farm	910973.470	253485.596	.364	3.594	.001

a. Dependent Variable: Household Income per year

Table shows the results of the independent variables that influence the household income of clients using function form. From these results, we discuss the relationship between the dependent and independent variables as follows:

For the clients analysis, we examine six independent variables to analyse which of them are important factors on household income. The value of the adjusted r^2 shows that about 61% of the independent variables are closely related to household income. For significance, the independent variables such as head of education level, head of age, member of workers in each households, head of gender, types of head jobs, ownership of farm are using related with household income. Four independent variables such as head of education level, head of age, number of workers in each household, ownership of farm are positively significant factors influencing household income. For age of the head of household, the factors have a positively significant influence on household income. Table shows on household income. According to the level of education, the villagers tend to go abroad and work there to promote the family income. As they become educated, so also their ability to use and decide will increase logically. The adult family members in every household are employed.

In some households both the breadwinner (Father) and the children (daughters and sons in law) work in the some agricultural field (the same acres of field). Some adult family members work for the garment tactories, construction sites, and work

abroad. Actually, the breadwinners are men. **With the help of microfinance, the family members do not need to rely only on the income of the breadwinner.**

The income of households depends on the ownership of the acres of land the households owning 5 acres has 30 lakhs to 35 lakhs. The income of households owning 5 acres of field is just enough for basic need but not to cover other expenses. Nowadays, the supporting cost for agricultural sector is so high that the economic status of these households owning 5 acres of field is quite hard to handle. The households owning 20 acres of field also possess agricultural expenses and machines. The households owning more acres of field can have reduced machinery costs as they can invest a large amount of money in field compared to the households owning less acres of field. This is the obvious advantage. Households possessing more fields can have the income about 120 lakhs and the costs of production may be different because they can utilize the own machines. The households which possess more farms may more cover cost of productions than the households owing small amount of farms.

Effects of Regional Employment on Household income through MFI

According to the ownership of farm land factor, one of the independent variables influencing on the income as mentioned earlier, the income of the households differ according to the ownership of the field. The loan are mostly used for agriculture. From the agricultural sector, import expenses like import prices, fertilizes, workers wages, machinery investment and farming product prices were invested, and transported to the market. Only if they can have the actual price. The present study area is too far away from the town to access the actual price. The loan achieved from microfinance is not enough to invest the crops in just on season. They cannot extend their business or set up their own new business by depending on MFI loan for agriculture.

Households which do not possess the fields can spend the loan to invest in selling local products like fish past, dry fish, domestic commodities, goods sold by street hawkers. However, they are not so effective for the sustainable development of the social standards.

Microfinance loan can help the villagers set up the regional employment more than before. The financial help can support just to supply the food. It is absolutely not possible to change or promote the living standards of the households with help of only microfinance loan.

The income can be raised based on several situations such as the local residents efforts to access the market, general knowledge, thoughts, working experiences, skills and weather conditions.

This village are many workers who can be strong enough to do the work. The villagers who earns their living in towns can have more money rather than those who work in the village. If they run the business at the village with microfinance loan effectively and efficiently, the villagers of any age can have the various job opportunities and will achieve the continuous development of the village. The MFI loan under 3 year period in the study area can have less effect on the local income. If they have loan over 3 year plan, they will have enough investment and do small and medium enterprise and achieve the good financial results by extending the market.

Discussion

The clients participated in the microfinance program for broadly the following reasons: the interest rates are low, collateral security is not required, the clients need loans, and they enjoy group financing. For non-clients, the reasons for not participating in the program include the following: they considered the procedures too complicated, feared legal action in case of default, are not interested in the program, did not need the loan, lacked information, and considered the loan terms unfavorable. From these findings, we can make some helpful suggestions and recommendations for the future programs.

According to the survey data there are six organizations which are providing microfinance services and loan. The most loan providing organization is only four of them. It is 19% of households are those which borrow the loan from one organization. 64% of households are those which borrow the loan from two organization, 13% of households are those which borrow the loan from three organization, 4% of households are those which borrow the loan from four organization.

According to the survey data of this study area, there are 69 households which do not possess any field 13 households which have 1-5 acres, 11 households possessing 11-20 acres 3 households owning over 20 acres. The age of breadwinners is 2 persons from age 1 to 20, 25 persons from age 21 to 40, 36 persons from age 41 to 60 and 6 persons over age 60. Concerning with educational status of the bread winners, there are 5 persons who has the primary level education, 14 persons who has reached secondary level education and 4 persons who studied at high school level.

Most of the breadwinners are farmers other job seekers involve mechanic, traders, construction, mason, carry driving, factory workers, farming and daily workers. Housewives are also working in the field, factory, various work, selling in the streets, sewing farming and grocery.

Some household clients do not have any field. The households possessing 5 acres of field is the most common and it is not possible to rely only on agriculture. The breadwinners of the households are mostly between 40 and 60 years. Their highest education is the primary level education. The children of most parents are between the age 20 and 30. They leave school and searched a job. **They can access both the local job opportunities in the village and job opportunities from the town.** So they quit their study. The students who go to school are not old enough to work. The breadwinners and housewives educational standard, the age range, the available job opportunities in village must be matched to have the suitable job with MFI loans and they have no difficulty to pay back. They had changed some of behavior, not only economics but also they got awareness and positive impacts on health, education, food situation and social sectors. The village is regarded as the successful village from MFI.

Conclusion

Microfinance emerged in the 1970's as social innovators who began to offer financial services to the working poor. The poor rarely had access to loans for they lack collateral or the resources to guarantee the repayment of the loans they had taken along with interest. Microfinance services provided by donor-supported, non-profit, non-government organizational to the poor proved to be a powerful instrument for poverty reduction. Microfinance program, to get sustainability for both sides' community as well as program, so that it is perceived as one component of development tools and to gain sustainable and faster growth path at micro level for National Development. The emergence of microfinance as a device for poverty alleviation and economic development and microfinance, according to its advocates, creates the means for greater employment and income-generation, allows the poor to smooth consumption and meet social, religious and other obligations, offers financial protection form crises and disasters, encourages schooling and empowers the marginalized-especially women.

Finding and Suggestions

The infrastructure of the study area is found out. It is difficult to achieve proper health standard of the local residents as there is the lack of Health Centre which is involved in soft infrastructure. The expenses spent for health care service can reduce the family income. The health condition can be affected due to the weakness of the access of pure drinking water. Owing to the lack of product outlet made, as one of the hard infrastructures there is the delay of trade flow. On account of the weakness of transportation, there is the high cost of transportation, there is the high cost of transportation to deliver and carry the products and goods. Due to the fact that there is not enough electricity usage, the standard of living cannot be developed so quickly, and, as a result, the production process and trade enterprises will not be greatly enhanced. There can be disturbance on the advancement of these processes.

There is the weak connection with urban area. Due to the weak connection, there is not proper access of information, the weakness of the access of market for products, and this can lead to the standard of income of the villagers. As the number of educated persons is not much more than it is necessary, there is the limitation of the income management knowledge of the residents. There is the lack of continuous regional income raising development can create the delay of continuous development of the area. Likewise, can lead to the establishment and emergence of the regional small and medium enterprises. The increase of the costs of supply can reduce the regional main business, the paddy cultivation, affecting the income of the households. There can be some consequences which can prevent the development of the agricultural production.

Due to the emergence of industrial sector development which is interrelatively connected with the economic development of the nation, there is the obvious transfer of labour from the agricultural sector which only gets the ordinary income to the industrial sector which gets the tax from the income. Therefore, there is the decreased number of labour in the agricultural sector. Despite the decreased number of labour in the agricultural sector, the income of the households goes up because the flow of income from the migrated workers to their family members in the village. The income flow from the migrated workers can help the villagers to pay back the loan of MFIs.

As the suggestion of the present study area, it is essential to cultivate crops and paddy using the proper and suitable technology, information and market during the fine and supportive season like winter and summer because the village is mostly

prone to be affected by the flood and the strike of bad weather as one of the results of being near the sea.

As the second fact, it is necessary to train the villagers to be able to use least fertilizers, change agricultural techniques, use the organic ways to cultivate crops and paddy. The training must be delivered to the villagers by the agricultural experts.

As the third fact, it is a good idea of the government supply the village by intensive analysis of projects creating the maximized social benefit with the network of NGOs, INGOs for the development of basic infrastructure in the study area. In order to establish new enterprises, the local government should pay more attention to the basic infrastructure requirement, market access facilities in the study area.

As the fourth fact, there should be educative training and vocational training for the human resource development, for the human resource development, for the male villagers who are older than the school age, there should be the industrial or other handicraft making training courses. For the female villagers there should be the sewing training courses as the vocational training courses as the vocational training. The villagers can invest domestic small and medium enterprises at their households and need to search the market. The young generation must be supported to be the educated persons. They can extend their family business by using both technical knowledge and vocational experiences.

As the fifth fact, there should have the trailer G type vehicles for the easy access of trade flow with the microfinance loan or the saved money with the same desired group.

If the households have excess income and increased investment, the villagers must attempt to have good communication skill for carrying out regular income raising business. They must connect with the dealers of international enterprises apart from local business in Myawaddy, Moe Sauk, Tar Chi late, for achieving the information source. As the extended business, the business must be planned for getting the investment provided by the microfinance. The villagers must be suggested to use and take the loan form microfinance if they actually need it to set up the income raising business.

Finally, The NGO who provides Capacity Building Training include, Leadership ability, community mobilizing and team building.

In sum, microfinance is a type of financial service providing loans to the poor to help them increase their household income and economic welfare, acquire property

and reduce poverty, and support their need for better livelihood. By participating in the microfinance program, the clients received loans to establish new enterprises based on their skills. The new enterprises helped some of them increase their household income, and many of them could gain better education for their children and improved household assets.

ဝတ္ထုတိုသဘောတရားနှင့် ဝတ္ထုတိုဖန်တီးမှု အတတ်ပညာ

ချိုဝေဝေလှိုင်^၁

စာတမ်းအကျဉ်း

ဤစာတမ်းတွင် ရသစာပေနယ်ပယ်အတွင်းရှိ ဝတ္ထုတိုသဘောတရားနှင့်ပတ်သက်၍ မြန်မာပညာရှင်များ၏ မြန်မာပညာရှင်များ၏ အဆိုအမိန့်များနှင့် သုံးသပ်ချက်များသာမက ဝတ္ထုတိုကောင်း တစ်ပုဒ်ဖြစ်လာစေရန် ရေးသူ၏ မှန်ကန်သောစေတနာနှင့် ကျွမ်းကျင်မှုအတတ်ပညာတို့ ပေါင်းစပ်ရန် လိုအပ်လှကြောင်း လေ့လာ တင်ပြထားပါသည်။ ထိုသို့ လေ့လာရာတွင် ဝတ္ထုတိုတစ်ပုဒ် ဖန်တီးရာ၌ မပါမဖြစ်ပါဝင်ရမည့် ဝတ္ထုတို အင်္ဂါရပ်များကို အခြေခံ၍ စာရေးဆရာမ မစန္ဒာ၏ “နှမ်းတစ်စေ့ ကြယ်တစ်ပွင့်နှင့် မင်တစ်စက်” ဝတ္ထုတိုတစ်ပုဒ်ကို အလေ့လာခံအဖြစ်ထားကာ ဝတ္ထုတိုဖန်တီးမှု အတတ်ပညာ၊ စာပေသဘောတရားနှင့် စာပေဖန်တီးမှုရှုထောင့် အရ လေ့လာတင်ပြထားပါသည်။

သော့ချက်ဝေါဟာရများ - ဦးတည်ချက်၊ ဇာတ်လမ်း၊ ဇာတ်ဆောင်၊ နောက်ခံ

နိဒါန်း

ဝတ္ထုဆိုသည်မှာ ဒိဋ္ဌဓမ္မလောကကို ကိုယ်စားပြုပုံဖော်ဖန်တီးထားသော ရသစာပေတစ်ခုဖြစ်သည်။ တိုတောင်းသောအချိန်ကာလအတွင်း လူ့ဘဝ၏ အဖြစ်အပျက်များကို မီးမောင်းထိုးတင်ပြနိုင်သည့် ဝတ္ထုတိုသည် လူတစ်ယောက်အကြောင်းကိုသာ ဖော်ပြသော်လည်း လောကရှိ လူသားတိုင်းအတွက် ခံစားဆင်ခြင်နိုင်စွမ်းရှိသည်အထိ ကျယ်ပြန့်လှပေသည်။ စာရေးသူ၏ မှန်ကန်သောစေတနာနှင့် စာရေးသူ၏ ကျွမ်းကျင်မှုအတတ်ပညာ ပေါင်းစပ်ခြင်းဖြင့် စာဖတ်သူ၏ နှလုံးသားအတွင်းသို့ ရောက်ရှိနိုင်ပြီး နှစ်သက်ခံစားမှုမှတစ်ဆင့် လေးနက်သော ဘဝအသိအမြင်များ ရရှိလာနိုင်ပေသည်။ တစ်နည်းအားဖြင့် ဝတ္ထုတိုသည် ရသစာပေဖြစ်သောကြောင့် စာဖတ်သူအား ခံစားမှုရသပေးစွမ်းနိုင်ပြီး ထိုရသခံစားမှုမှတစ်ဆင့် ဘဝအသိသို့ ရောက်ရှိနိုင်ပေသည်။ စာရေးသူများသည် မိမိတို့ ပတ်ဝန်းကျင်တွင် တွေ့ကြုံရင်ဆိုင်နေရသော အကြောင်းအရာမျိုးစုံ၊ အဖြစ်အပျက်မျိုးစုံတို့ကို ခံစားမှုဖြစ်ပေါ်ရာမှ စာဖတ်သူများကို ဝေမျှချင်သော စိတ်စေတနာ (ဝါ) ဦးတည်ချက်ဖြင့် ဇာတ်လမ်း၊ ဇာတ်ဆောင်၊ နောက်ခံတို့၏အကူအညီဖြင့် ဇာတ်လမ်းဇာတ်ကွက်ဆင်၍ ဝတ္ထုတိုဖန်တီးမှုအတတ်ပညာများ နည်းစနစ်များကိုသုံးကာ ဝတ္ထုစာပေအဖြစ် ရသမြောက်အောင် ဖန်တီးတတ်ကြသည်။ ထို့ကြောင့် ဝတ္ထုတို၏ ဦးတည်ချက်ပေါ်မူတည်၍ ဦးတည်ချက်အဆင့် ကွဲပြားသကဲ့သို့ ဇာတ်လမ်းဖန်တီးပုံ၊ ဇာတ်ဆောင်စရိုက်ဖော်ပုံ၊ နောက်ခံဖန်တီးပုံစသည်တို့သည် ဝတ္ထုတိုကောင်းတစ်ပုဒ်ဖြစ်ရန်အတွက် အထောက်အပံ့ဖြစ်စေမည့် ဝတ္ထုတိုဖန်တီးမှုအတတ်ပညာများဖြစ်ကြောင်း တွေ့မြင်ရသည်။ ကျွန်မ၏ စာတမ်းတွင် ဝတ္ထုတိုသဘောတရား၊ ဝတ္ထုတိုအင်္ဂါရပ်များ၊ ဝတ္ထုတိုကောင်း တစ်ပုဒ် ဖြစ်ရန်အတွက် အထောက်အပံ့ဖြစ်စေမည့်ဝတ္ထုတိုဖန်တီးမှုအတတ်ပညာများကို မစန္ဒာ၏ဝတ္ထုတို တစ်ပုဒ်ဖြင့် စာပေ ဖန်တီးမှုရှုထောင့်အရ သရုပ်ဖော်ဆန်းစစ်နည်းကိုသုံး၍ လေ့လာတင်ပြထားပါသည်။

^၁ ဒေါက်တာ ၊ လက်ထောက်ကထိက၊ မြန်မာစာဌာန၊ သမဝါယမတက္ကသိုလ် (သန်လျင်)

ရည်ရွယ်ချက်

မြန်မာစာပေတွင် သုတစာပေနှင့် ရသစာပေ နှစ်မျိုးရှိသည့်အနက် ရသစာပေတစ်ခုဖြစ်သော ဝတ္ထုတိုများသည် စာဖတ်သူများအတွက် နှစ်သက်ခြင်း (ဝါ) ခံစားမှုရသအမျိုးမျိုးကို ပေးစွမ်းနိုင်ရုံ သာမက လောကသဘာဝ၊ လူ့သဘာဝများကို ဆင်ခြင်မှတ်သားလိုက်နာဖွယ်ဖြစ်အောင် လမ်းညွှန်ပြသနိုင်ပေသည်။ ထို့ကြောင့် ရသစာပေနယ်ပယ်တွင် ခိုင်မာအားကောင်းသော ဝတ္ထုတိုသဘောတရား၊ ဝတ္ထုတိုအခန်းကဏ္ဍနှင့် ဝတ္ထုတိုဖန်တီးမှုအတတ်ပညာများကို သိရှိလာနိုင်စေရန်၊ ဖတ်ရှုခံစားသူနှင့် ကိုယ်တိုင်ဖန်တီးရေးသားလိုသူများအတွက် မှန်ကန်သော အသိအမြင်များ ရရှိလာနိုင်ပြီး မြန်မာဝတ္ထုတိုထွန်းကားရေးအတွက် တစ်ဖက်တစ်လမ်းမှ အထောက်အကူပြုနိုင်စေရန် ရည်ရွယ်ပါသည်။

၁။ ဝတ္ထုတိုသဘောတရား

၁။ ၁။ ဝတ္ထုတိုဟူသည်

မြန်မာစာပေတွင် စာပေပုံသဏ္ဌာန်အမျိုးမျိုးရှိသည့်အနက် ဝတ္ထုစာပေသည် စာဖတ်သူ၏ စိတ်အာရုံကို ထိထိမိမိဆွဲဆောင်နိုင်သော “ရသစာပေ” တစ်ခုဖြစ်သည်။ တစ်နည်းအားဖြင့် ဝတ္ထုစာပေသည် ဒိဋ္ဌဓမ္မလောကရှိ လူတို့၏အကျင့်၊ အမူအရာ၊ စရိုက်သဘာဝတို့ကို ယုတ္တိရှိအောင် ဇာတ်လမ်းဇာတ်ကွက်ဆင်၍ စိတ်ကူးဉာဏ်ဖြင့် ဖန်တီးရသော အနုပညာတစ်ရပ်ဖြစ်သည်။ ဝတ္ထုတိုနှင့်ပတ်သက်၍ မြန်မာအဘိဓာန်တွင်-

ဝတ္ထုတိုဆိုသည်မှာ ဇာတ်ဆောင်တစ်ဦး (သို့မဟုတ်) အများကို အခြေခံထား၍ ဖြစ်ပျက်ခြင်းရာတို့ကို စိတ်ဝင်စားဖွယ် ဖွဲ့နွဲ့ရေးသားထားသော အကြောင်းအရာစု။
(မြန်မာအဘိဓာန်၊ ၁၉၉၁၊ ၃၆၀)

ဟူ၍ ဖွင့်ဆိုထားကြောင်း တွေ့မြင်ရသည်။

ဝတ္ထုတိုသဘောတရားနှင့်ပတ်သက်၍ ဆရာအောင်သင်းကမူ-

ဝတ္ထုတိုဆိုသည်မှာ စိတ်ကူးဖြင့် ဖန်တီးထားသော ဇာတ်ဆောင်၊ လူ၊ တိရစ္ဆာန် (သို့မဟုတ်) ပစ္စည်းတို့၏ အတ္ထုပ္ပတ္တိပင်ဖြစ်သည်။
(အောင်သင်း၊ ၁၉၇၈၊ ၂၃၃)

ဟု ဆိုထားပြီး၊ ဒဂုန်တာရာကမူ ဝတ္ထုတိုဟူသည် အရေအတွက်၊ အတိုင်းအထွာ တိုခြင်းကို ဆိုလိုခြင်းမျိုးမဟုတ်ဘဲ စာရေးသူ၏ စိတ်စေတနာမှတစ်ဆင့် လေးနက်သော အတွေးအခေါ်တစ်ခု အဖြစ်အပျက်တစ်ခုကို ဖော်ပြခြင်းမျိုးကိုသာလျှင် ဝတ္ထုတိုဟုဆိုနိုင်ကြောင်း-

ဝတ္ထုတိုဆိုသည်ကား ဝတ္ထုစာသား အတိုင်းအထွာတိုခြင်း၏ အနက်ကိုယူခြင်း မဟုတ်သည်ကို သိလာရ၏။ အတွေးအခေါ်တစ်ခု၊ အဖြစ်အပျက်တစ်ခု၏ ကြီးကျယ်လေးနက် ခြင်းကို ဖော်ပြခြင်းပင်ဖြစ်၏။

(ဒဂုန်တာရာ၊ ၁၉၆၉၊ ၂၃၅)

ဟူ၍ ဖွင့်ဆိုခဲ့သည်။

အလားတူ ဆရာမင်းကျော်က-

အတိုတောင်းဆုံး အချိန်ပိုင်းအတွင်း အနည်းဆုံးဇာတ်ဆောင်တို့၏ လှုပ်ရှားမှု (သို့) အာရုံခံစားမှုတို့ကို စာလုံးအရေအတွက် အနည်းနိုင်ဆုံးဖြင့် ကျစ်လျစ်ရေးဖွဲ့တင်ပြသော စာတို့ကို ဝတ္ထုတိုဟုဆိုလျှင် မှားလိမ့်မည်မဟုတ်ပါ။ (မင်းကျော်၊ ၁၉၇၉၊ ၁၁၇)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း၊ ဆရာကျော်အောင်ကမူ-

ဝတ္ထုတိုဆိုသည်မှာ အဖြစ်အပျက်များကို မှတ်တမ်းတင်ထားခြင်းဖြစ်သည်။ ရုတ်တရက် ရှောင်တခင်အဖြစ်အပျက်တွေ့ပါမည်။ မြန်မြန်လှုပ်ရှားရမည်။ မမျှော်လင့်ဘဲ တစ်စုံတစ်ခု ဖြစ်သွားမည်။ ထို့နောက် ဇာတ်လမ်းအထွတ်ရောက် သွားပြီး နောက်ဆုံးတွင် ကျေနပ် လက်ခံစရာ ဇာတ်ထုံးဖြေပါရှိရမည်။ (ကျော်အောင်၊ ၁၉၇၉၊ ၄၂)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း၊ ဆရာမောင်ထင်ကမူ-

ဝတ္ထုတိုအဖွဲ့သည် ယေဘုယျအားဖြင့် အကြောင်းအရာတစ်ခု ဖြစ်ရပ်၊ လုပ်ရပ်၊ စိတ်ကူး၊ ဆင်ခြင်ပုံ အတွေးအခေါ်တစ်ခု စသည်ဖြင့် တစ်ခုသောအချက်ကို ဗဟိုမဏ္ဍိုင်ပြု၍ ဖွဲ့ဆိုသောအဖွဲ့ဖြစ်သည်။ (မောင်ထင်၊ ၁၉၇၃၊ ၂၁၇)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း ဝတ္ထုတိုနှင့်ပတ်သက်သော ဖွင့်ဆိုချက်များကို အသီးသီးဖွင့်ဆိုထားကြောင်း တွေ့မြင်ရသည်။

ထိုမျှမက ဝတ္ထုတိုနှင့်ပတ်သက်၍ တက္ကသိုလ်နန္ဒမိတ်က-

ဝတ္ထုတို၌ ဇာတ်လမ်းဖြစ်ပျက်သည့် အချိန်ကာလကို တိုတောင်းရမည်ဟု ရှိစေကာမူ ဆယ်နှစ်၊ တစ်ဆယ့်သုံးနှစ်၊ အနှစ်နှစ်ဆယ်ကာလအတွင်း အဖြစ်အပျက် အကျဉ်းချုပ်၍ ဝတ္ထုကို ရေးသားကြသည်လည်း ရှိပေသေးသည်။ သို့သော် ဝတ္ထုတိုနှင့် ပတ်သက်၍ အများလက်ခံနိုင်မည်ထင်သောအချက်ကား တိုတိုတုတ်တုတ်နှင့် လိုရင်းချုပ်၍ ရေးသား သင့်သည်ဟူသော အချက်ပင်ဖြစ်သည်။ (တက္ကသိုလ်နန္ဒမိတ်၊ ၁၉၆၃၊ ၆၀)

ဟု ဆိုထားပေသည်။ ပညာရှင်များ၏ ဖွင့်ဆိုချက်များကို အခြေခံ၍ ဝတ္ထုတိုဟူသည် “စာရေးသူ တင်ပြလိုသော အကြောင်းအရာမျိုးစုံ၊ အဖြစ်အပျက်မျိုးစုံတို့ကို အချိန်တိုအတွင်း စာဖတ်သူ၏ စိတ်တွင် ထင်းကနဲမြင်ယောင်လာအောင် ဇာတ်လမ်း၊ ဇာတ်ဆောင်တို့ကို အသုံးပြု၍ ဖန်တီးရေးဖွဲ့ထားသည့် နှစ်သက်ဖွယ်ကောင်းသော ရသစာပေပုံသဏ္ဌာန်တစ်ရပ်ဖြစ်သည်” ဟု ယူဆမိပါသည်။

၁၊ ၂။ ဝတ္ထုတိုအင်္ဂါရပ်များ

ရသစာပေအဖွဲ့ဖြစ်သော ဝတ္ထုတို၏ အင်္ဂါရပ်များကို လေ့လာကြည့်လျှင် ဝတ္ထုရှည်ကဲ့သို့ပင် စာရေးသူ၏အာဘော်၊ ဇာတ်လမ်း၊ ဇာတ်ဆောင်၊ နောက်ခံ၊ အရေးအသားတင်ပြပုံများ ပါဝင်ကြောင်း တွေ့မြင်ရသည်။ ဝတ္ထုတိုအင်္ဂါရပ်များနှင့်ပတ်သက်၍ ဒဂုန်တာရာက-

ဇာတ်လမ်း၊ လူ့သဘာဝအဖွဲ့၊ ဇာတ်တည်ရာအချိန်ခေတ် နေရာဒေသ၊ လောက သဘာဝအဖွဲ့၊ စာရေးစာသား။ (ဒဂုန်တာရာ၊ ၁၉၆၉၊ ၅၁၃)

ဟူ၍ ဖွင့်ဆိုထားပါသည်။

ဝတ္ထုတို့သည် စိတ်ကူးဉာဏ်ဖြင့် ဖန်တီးရသော အနုပညာတစ်ရပ်ဖြစ်ကြောင်း ဝတ္ထုတို စာတမ်းတွင် ဆရာမင်းယုဝေက-

ဇာတ်လမ်း၊ လူ့သဘာဝအဖွဲ့၊ ဘဝပြဿနာအဖွဲ့၊ အတွေးသရုပ်ဖော်အဖွဲ့၊

ကာလဒေသ ပတ်ဝန်းကျင်အဖွဲ့တို့ဖြစ်ကြောင်း။ (မင်းယုဝေ၊ ၁၉၇၉၊ ၁၆၅)

ဟုဆိုထားပြီး၊ သူရိယကန္တိကလည်း “ဝတ္ထုရေးလိုသော်” စာအုပ်တွင်-

ဝတ္ထုရည်ရွယ်ချက်၊ ဝတ္ထုသွား၊ ဝတ္ထုအပြော၊ ဝတ္ထုနောက်ခံ၊ သရုပ်ဖော်မှု၊

အကျိုးအကြောင်းဖော်ပြချက်၊ သဘာဝကျမှု၊ အရှုပ်အထွေး ရှင်းလင်းချက်။

(သူရိယကန္တိ၊ ၁၉၅၇၊ ၆၂)

ဟူ၍ အနက်အဓိပ္ပာယ်ဖွင့်ဆိုခဲ့သည်။ ပညာရှင်အသီးသီး၏ ဖွင့်ဆိုချက်များအရ ဝတ္ထုတိုတစ်ပုဒ်၌ “ဦးတည်ချက်၊ ဇာတ်လမ်း၊ ဇာတ်ဆောင်၊ ကာလဒေသနောက်ခံ၊ အရေးအသားနှင့် တင်ပြပုံ” တို့သည် မပါမဖြစ်သည့် အင်္ဂါရပ်များဖြစ်သည်ဟု လေ့လာထင်မြင်ယူဆမိပါသည်။

၁၊ ၃။ ဝတ္ထုတိုနှင့် ဦးတည်ချက်

စာရေးသူများသည် မိမိတို့ပတ်ဝန်းကျင် ဒိဋ္ဌဓမ္မလောကမှ အဖြစ်အပျက်မျိုးစုံ အကြောင်းအရာ မျိုးစုံတို့ကို မှန်ကန်သော အသိအမြင်များဖြင့် ဝေဖန်ပိုင်းခြားတတ်စေရန် စေတနာ ရည်ရွယ်ချက် ထားကာ မိမိတို့ခံစားသိရှိရသော အကြောင်းအရာတို့ကို စာဖတ်သူတို့အား သိစေလိုသောစေတနာဖြင့် ဝတ္ထုတိုများ ရေးသားခဲ့သည်။ ထိုသို့ သိစေလိုသော ဖော်ပြချက်သည်ပင် စေတနာ (ဝါ) ဦးတည်ချက် ဖြစ်ပါသည်။ ဦးတည်ချက်သည် ဝတ္ထုတစ်ပုဒ်လုံးကို ထိန်းချုပ်ပေးထားလေသည်။ ဦးတည်ချက် မှန်ကန်တိကျလေလေ ဘဝအသိအမြင် ရရှိနိုင်လေလေဖြစ်သည်။ ဦးတည်ချက်နှင့်ပတ်သက်၍ ဆရာဇော်ဂျီက-

စေတနာဆိုသည်မှာ စာရေးဆရာ၏ မေတ္တာ၊ ကရုဏာ စေတနာအမှန်ကို လိုလားသော စေတနာ၊ စေတနာအမှားကို မလိုလားသည့် စေတနာ စသည်ဖြင့် ထိုကဲ့သို့သော စိတ်ဓာတ်မျိုးကို ဆိုလိုပါသည်။ စေတနာသည် ပဲ့ကိုင်ဖြစ်၍ စေတနာထားသော အရာသည် ပန်းတိုင်ဖြစ်သည်။ ထိုပန်းတိုင်သို့ အရောက်လှမ်းပို့တတ်သည်ဟု ယူသော် ရသင့်ပါသည်။ (ဇော်ဂျီ၊ ၁၉၈၄၊ ၂၈)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း၊ တက္ကသိုလ်ဘုန်းနိုင်ကမူ-

စေတနာ၌ ရည်ရွယ်ချက်၊ ဦးတည်ချက်၊ ခံယူချက်၊ လောကအမြင်၊ မူဝါဒသဘော အားလုံးပါသည်။ စေတနာသည် မည်သည့်အကြောင်းအရာကို ရေးမည်၊ မည်သည့် အချက်အလက်ကို ကုန်ကြမ်းအဖြစ် သုံးမည်ကို ဆုံးဖြတ်သည်။ ဤသို့ ဆုံးဖြတ်ပြီး သည်နှင့် ဖန်တီးခြင်းအမှုကို စတော့၏။ ဖန်တီးခြင်းဆိုသည်မှာ ရှိပြီး၊ သိပြီး၊ တည်နေ ပြီးသော အတွေ့အကြုံလောကမှ အချက်အလက်ကုန်ကြမ်းကို အနုပညာ ဟူသော ကုန်ချောတည်းဟူသည့် အသစ်ဘဝတစ်ခုရောက်ရန် ပြောင်းလဲလိုက်သည့် ကျွမ်းကျင်မှု ဖြစ်၏။ (တက္ကသိုလ်ဘုန်းနိုင်၊ ၂၀၀၄၊ ၈၁)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း၊ ဆရာအောင်သင်းကလည်း-

ဝတ္ထုရေးသူ၏အာဘော်သည် ဝတ္ထုဖတ်သူအဖို့ သင်ခန်းစာဖြစ်သည်ဟု ဆိုနိုင်ပါသည်။ ယင်းသို့ စာဖတ်သူ သင်ခန်းစာ (ခံစားသိ) ရစေရန် စေတနာထားခြင်းကိုပင် ရေးသူ၏ ရည်ရွယ်ချက်ဟု ဆိုသင့်သည်ဟု ယူဆမိပါသည်။ (အောင်သင်း၊ ၁၉၇၈၊ ၃၂၀)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း စာရေးသူ၏ စေတနာရည်ရွယ်ချက်သည်ပင် ဝတ္ထု၏ ဦးတည်ချက်ပင် ဖြစ်ကြောင်း အနက်ဖွင့်ဆိုခဲ့သည်။ သူရိယကန္တကလည်း-

ရည်ရွယ်ချက်ကို မဏ္ဍိုင်ပြုလျက် ဝတ္ထုရေးသားရသဖြင့် ဝတ္ထုကို ဖတ်၍ဆုံးသည်နှင့် ရည်ရွယ်ချက်၏ သဘောတရားကို ဖတ်ရှုသူ၏ စိတ်တွင် ထိထိရောက်ရောက် ကွင်းကွင်းကွက်ကွက် ထင်ထင်လင်းလင်း ပေါ်ပေါက်စေနိုင်သည်။

(သူရိယကန္တ၊ ၁၉၉၅၊ ၁၅၈-၁၅၉)

ဟူ၍ ဝတ္ထုတစ်ပုဒ်၏ ရည်ရွယ်ချက်မှသည် စာဖတ်သူ၌ စိတ်ခံစားမှုဖြစ်ပေါ်စေနိုင်ကြောင်း ဝတ္ထုတစ်ပုဒ်၏ ဦးတည်ချက်သည် စာရေးသူ၏ စေတနာရည်ရွယ်ချက်ပင်ဖြစ်ကြောင်း ဖွင့်ဆိုထားပါသည်။

ဝတ္ထုဦးတည်ချက်နှင့်ပတ်သက်၍ ပညာရှင်များ၏ ဖွင့်ဆိုချက်အသီးသီးကို လေ့လာကြည့်လျှင် “စာရေးသူသည် မိမိခံစားသိရှိသော အသိအမြင်တစ်ခုခုကို စာဖတ်သူအား ပြောလိုသည့်အခါ စေတနာနှင့် ဆီလျော်ညီညွတ်မည့် အကြောင်းအရာ ဇာတ်လမ်း၊ ဇာတ်ဆောင် စသည်တို့ဖြင့် စည်းရုံးဖန်တီးလေ့ရှိသည်။ ဦးတည်ချက်၊ ရည်ရွယ်ချက်၊ အာဘော်၊ စေတနာ စသည်ဖြင့် အမျိုးမျိုး ခေါ်ဆိုကြသော်လည်း ဦးတည်ချက်ဟူသည် ဝတ္ထုတစ်ပုဒ်တွင် စာရေးသူပြောလိုသော အဓိက အကြောင်းအချက်ဖြစ်သည်” ဟု ဆိုနိုင်ပေသည်။

၁၊ ၄။ ဝတ္ထုတိုနှင့် ဇာတ်လမ်း

ဝတ္ထုတိုသည် ဒိဋ္ဌဓမ္မလောကရှိ အဖြစ်အပျက်တစ်ခုပေါ်အခြေခံ၍ စာရေးသူ၏ စိတ်စေတနာ၊ အနုပညာစိတ်ကူးဉာဏ်ဖြင့် ဖန်တီးတင်ပြရသောစာမျိုးဖြစ်သည်။ ဒိဋ္ဌဓမ္မလောက၌ လူသားတိုင်းတွင် ဘဝဇာတ်ကြောင်းများရှိကြပြီး ဇာတ်ကြောင်းဆိုသည်မှာ ဖြစ်ရပ်များကို အချိန်ကာလ အစဉ်အတိုင်း ရေးသားခြင်းဖြစ်၍ ဇာတ်ကွက်မှာမူ ဖြစ်ရပ်များထဲမှ စိတ်ဝင်စားဖွယ်အကောင်းဆုံး ဇာတ်ကွက်များကို ရွေးချယ်၍ အကျိုးသင့် အကြောင်းသင့်ဖြစ်အောင် ချိတ်ဆက်တင်ပြထားသည့် သဘောပင်ဖြစ်သည်။ ဝတ္ထုထဲတွင်မူ ဇာတ်ကွက်များကို ချိတ်ဆက်ထားခြင်းဖြင့် ဇာတ်လမ်းဖြစ်ပေါ်လာရသည်။ ဝတ္ထုဖြစ်လျှင် ဇာတ်လမ်းသဘောသည် အနည်းဆုံး အရိပ်အယောင်မျှ ပါဝင်လေ့ရှိပြီး ဇာတ်လမ်းသည် ဝတ္ထုတိုတစ်ပုဒ်၏ အသက်ပင်ဖြစ်ကြောင်း ဇာတ်လမ်းသဘောနှင့်ပတ်သက်၍-

ရုပ်ရှင်၊ ပြဇာတ်၊ ဝတ္ထုစသည်တို့တွင် ပါဝင်သော အဖြစ်အပျက်၊ အကြောင်းအရာ၊ အစအဆုံး၊ ဇာတ်ကြောင်း။ (မြန်မာအဘိဓာန်၊ ၁၉၉၁၊ ၁၃၁)

ဟူ၍ မြန်မာအဘိဓာန်တွင် ဖွင့်ဆိုထားသည်။ ဆရာမင်းယုဝေကမူ-

ဇာတ်လမ်းဟူသည် ဇာတ်ဆောင်အချင်းချင်းသော်လည်းကောင်း၊ ဇာတ်ဆောင်နှင့် အရေးကိစ္စ တစ်ခုခုသော်လည်းကောင်း၊ ဇာတ်ဆောင်နှင့် အတွင်းစိတ်သဏ္ဌာန်သော် လည်းကောင်း၊ ဆန့်ကျင်ဘက်အင်အားစုနှစ်ခု အားပြိုင်ရာမှ ပေါ်ထွန်းလာ တတ်သော သဘောဖြစ်ပါသည်။ ထို့ကြောင့် ဝတ္ထုဖြစ်လျှင် ဇာတ်လမ်းသဘောသည် အနည်းဆုံး အရိပ်အယောင်မျှ ပါတတ်သည်ချည်း ဖြစ်ပါသည်။ (မင်းယုဝေ၊ ၁၉၇၉၊ ၁၆၈)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း၊ တက္ကသိုလ်ဘုန်းနိုင်ကမူ-

ဇာတ်လမ်းဆိုသည်မှာ စာရေးသူက စာဖတ်သူကို ပြောချင်သော အကြောင်း လေးသာ ဖြစ်သည်။ (တက္ကသိုလ်ဘုန်းနိုင်၊ ၁၉၈၁၊ ၃၇)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း ဖွင့်ဆိုခဲ့သည်။

ပညာရှင်များ၏ ဖွင့်ဆိုချက်များအရ “ဇာတ်လမ်းဟူသည် ဇာတ်ဆောင်နှင့် ပတ်ဝန်းကျင် ထိတွေ့အားပြိုင်မှုကြောင့် ဖြစ်ပေါ်လာသော ဖြစ်ရပ်များကို ဇာတ်ကွက်ဖော် ဖန်တီးမှုများဖြင့် ကြောင်းကျိုးဆက်စပ် ဖန်တီးထားသော သဘောပင်ဖြစ်သည်” ဟု ထင်မြင်ယူဆမိပါသည်။

၁၊ ၄၊ ၁။ ဇာတ်လမ်းဖွံ့ဖြိုးမှုအတွက် အသုံးပြုသော နည်းစနစ်များ

ဝတ္ထုဖန်တီးသူသည် မိမိတင်ပြလိုသည့် ဝတ္ထုဦးတည်ချက် ပေါ်လွင်ထင်ရှားလာစေရန် ဇာတ်လမ်းဖြင့် စာဖတ်သူကို ဆွဲဆောင်စည်းရုံးခြင်းပြုရပါသည်။ ကောင်းစွာဖန်တီးထားသော ဝတ္ထုတိုကောင်း တစ်ပုဒ်တွင် ဇာတ်ပျိုး၊ ဇာတ်တက်၊ ဇာတ်ထွတ်၊ ဇာတ်ဆင်း၊ ဇာတ်သိမ်းပိုင်းတို့ ပါဝင်ပြီး ဇာတ်လမ်းတွင် စ၊ လယ်၊ ဆုံး ဟူ၍ အပိုင်း (၃) ပိုင်းရှိကြောင်း တွေ့မြင်ရသည်။ ဝတ္ထုအစမှ အဆုံးထိ စာဖတ်သူ၏ စိတ်ဝင်စားမှုအရှိန် မြင့်သည်ထက်မြင့်လာအောင် ဇာတ်လမ်းကို ဖန်တီးရေးသားလေ့ရှိပြီး ဇာတ်လမ်း ဖန်တီးမှုအတတ်ပညာနှင့် ပတ်သက်၍ ဆရာဇော်ဂျီက-

ဇာတ်လမ်းအစပျိုးပါရသည်ဟုလည်းကောင်း၊ ထို့နောက် အဖြစ်အပျက်များနှင့် ဇာတ်ဆောင်များ၏ အမှုအရာများ၌ နှစ်ဖက်အုပ်စုတို့၏ အားပြိုင်မှုပါရသည်ဟု လည်းကောင်း၊ ထို့နောက် အနိုင်အရှုံးပေါ်လာမှု ပါရသည်ဟုလည်းကောင်း၊ ဇာတ်လမ်း အဆုံးသတ်မှုရှိရသည်ဟုလည်းကောင်း သဘောငါးခုကို ဆရာဆရာများ ဆိုခဲ့ကြ သည်မဟုတ်လော။ (ဇော်ဂျီ၊ ၂၀၀၉၊ ၁၉၇)

ဟူ၍ ဖွင့်ဆိုခဲ့သည်။ တစ်နည်းအားဖြင့် ဇာတ်လမ်းဆင်ပုံနည်းစနစ်များတွင် ဇာတ်လမ်းဖွံ့ဖြိုးစေမည့် နည်းစနစ်များဖြစ်သော “အားပြိုင်မှုများ၊ မြှုပ်ကွက်များ၊ နိမိတ်ပြကွက်များ၊ ဇာတ်ကြောင်းပြန်မှုများ၊ ဇာတ်ကွက်ဖော်ဖန်တီးမှုများ၊ အနုစိတ်ခြယ်မှုန်းရေးသားမှုများ” စသည့် နည်းစနစ်များသည် ဇာတ်လမ်းကောင်းတစ်ပုဒ်ဖြစ်လာစေရန် ဖန်တီးအသုံးပြုလေ့ရှိသည့် ဇာတ်လမ်းဖန်တီးမှု အတတ်ပညာ များပင်ဖြစ်သည်ဟု ဆိုနိုင်ပေသည်။

၁၊ ၅။ ဝတ္ထုတိုနှင့် ဇာတ်ဆောင်

ဝတ္ထုတစ်ပုဒ်ဖြစ်ပေါ်လာစေရန် ဇာတ်လမ်းနှင့် ဖြစ်ရပ်များသည် ပဓာနကျသကဲ့သို့ ထိုဇာတ်လမ်းနှင့် ဖြစ်ရပ်များ ဖြစ်တည်လာစေရန် လှုပ်ရှားဆောင်ရွက်ရသူမှာ ဇာတ်ဆောင်ပင်ဖြစ်သည်။ “ဇာတ်ဆောင်” နှင့်ပတ်သက်၍ တက္ကသိုလ်နန္ဒမိတ်က-

ဝတ္ထုဇာတ်လမ်းထဲတွင် တစ်နည်းနည်းဖြင့် ပါဝင်သူမှန်သမျှကို ဇာတ်ကောင်ဟု ခေါ်ဝေါ်ကြ၏။ ဝတ္ထုတစ်ပုဒ်၏ အသက်သွေးကြောမှာ ထိုဝတ္ထုတွင် ပါဝင်သော ဇာတ်ကောင်များ၏ လှုပ်ရှားမှုပင်ဖြစ်သည်။ ဇာတ်ကောင်များ၏ လှုပ်ရှားမှုသည် သဘာဝကျပါက ဝတ္ထုတစ်ပုဒ်သည် အသက်ဝင်၍ သဘာဝယုတ္တိကင်းမဲ့နေပါက ဝတ္ထုတစ်ပုဒ်သည် အသက်မဝင်နိုင်ပေ။ (တက္ကသိုလ်နန္ဒမိတ်၊ ၁၉၆၃၊ ၅၂-၅၃)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း၊ ဆရာမင်းယုဝေက-

လူသဘာဝအဖွဲ့ကို လူသဘော၊ လူစရိုက်အဖွဲ့ ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း ခေါ်ကြပါသည်။ ယင်းအဖွဲ့သည် ဝတ္ထုရှည်တွင်ဖြစ်စေ ဝတ္ထုတိုတွင်ဖြစ်စေ အရေးအကြီးဆုံးဖြစ်ပါသည်။ ဝတ္ထုတိုတစ်ပုဒ်တွင် လူသဘာဝအဖွဲ့ကောင်းမွန်ပါမှု ယင်းဝတ္ထုတိုကိုဝတ္ထုတိုကောင်း အဖြစ် သတ်မှတ်လိုက်ကြပါသည်။ (မင်းယုဝေ၊ ၁၉၇၉၊ ၁၇၄)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း၊ ဆရာသိန်းဖေမြင့်က-

ဝတ္ထုရေးရာ၌ ဇာတ်ကောင်စရိုက်သဘာဝ သရုပ်ဖော်မှုသည် အထူးအရေးကြီးသည်။ ဝတ္ထုကောင်း၊ မကောင်းကို အဆုံးအဖြတ်ပေးသော အချက်ကြီးတစ်ချက်ဖြစ်သည်။ (သိန်းဖေမြင့်၊ ၁၉၆၇၊ ၁၈၄)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း ဖွင့်ဆိုထားပါသည်။ ဖွင့်ဆိုချက်များကို လေ့လာကြည့်လျှင် ကောင်းမွန်သော ဇာတ်လမ်းဖြစ်ပေါ်ရေးအတွက် ဇာတ်ဆောင်များသည် ဝတ္ထုထဲတွင် အဓိကကျသော အစိတ်အပိုင်းမှ ပါဝင်လျက်ရှိပြီး ဝတ္ထုတစ်ပုဒ်၏ အသက်သွေးကြောသည် ဇာတ်ဆောင်တို့၏ လှုပ်ရှားမှုပင်ဖြစ်ကြောင်း တွေ့ရှိရသည်။ တစ်နည်းအားဖြင့် ဝတ္ထုတစ်ပုဒ်ကို ရေးဖွဲ့ရာတွင် စာရေးသူဖော်ပြလိုသည့် ဦးတည်ချက် ကို ဇာတ်ဆောင်တို့ဖြင့် ဖော်ပြနိုင်ပြီး “ဇာတ်ဆောင်ဟူသည် ဇာတ်လမ်းဖြစ်ပေါ်ရန်နှင့် ရည်ရွယ်ချက် ပေါ်လွင်စေရန်အတွက် လူတန်းစားအသီးသီး၏ ဘဝအဖုံဖုံကို ကိုယ်စားပြုဖန်တီးထားသူဖြစ်သည်” ဟု ထင်မြင်ယူဆမိပါသည်။

၁၊ ၅၊ ၁။ ဇာတ်ဆောင်စရိုက်သရုပ်ဖော်မှု

ဝတ္ထုတစ်ပုဒ်ဖြစ်တည်လာရန်အတွက် ဇာတ်လမ်းနှင့်ဖြစ်ရပ်များသည် ပဓာနကျပြီး ဇာတ်ဆောင်များ သည် ဇာတ်လမ်းဖြစ်ပေါ်ရန်၊ ရည်ရွယ်ချက်ပေါ်လွင်ရန်၊ ဇာတ်လမ်းသက်ဝင်လှုပ်ရှားမှုရှိရန်အတွက် ပါဝင်ရသူများဖြစ်သည်။ ဇာတ်လမ်းတွင် ပါဝင်သည့် ဇာတ်ဆောင်များ၏ စရိုက်သရုပ်ဖော်မှုနှင့် ပတ်သက်၍ မမိုးမြေက-

သရုပ်ဖော်ရေးသားခြင်း၊ အပြုအမူလှုပ်ရှားမှုနှင့် ဖော်ပြခြင်း၊ အတွေး (ဝါ) အပြောနှင့် ဖော်ပြခြင်း၊ သင်္ကေတ (ဝါ) နိမိတ်ပုံနှင့် ဖော်ပြခြင်း (မမိုးမြေ၊ ၂၀၀၉၊ ၁၈၅)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း၊ သူရိယကန္တိကမူ-

ဇာတ်လိုက်တို့၏ သဏ္ဌာန်သရုပ်ကို စာရေးဆရာက တိုက်ရိုက်ရေးသားဖော်ပြခြင်း၊
ဇာတ်လမ်းသယ်ယူသွားရာတွင် ၎င်းတို့၏ သဏ္ဌာန်သရုပ်ကို အရိပ်နိမိတ်ဖြင့်
ဖော်ပြခြင်း၊ ၎င်းတို့ တစ်ဦးနှင့်တစ်ဦး အချီအချာပြောစကားဖြင့် သဏ္ဌာန်သရုပ်ကို
ပေါ်စေခြင်း၊ ၎င်းတို့၏ အလေ့အကျင့် ဟန်ပန်အမူအယာများကို ဖော်ပြ၍
သဏ္ဌာန်သရုပ်ဖော် စေခြင်းများ ဖြစ်ကြသည်။ (သူရိယကန္တိ ၁၉၆၇၊ ၅၆)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း အသီးသီးဖွင့်ဆိုခဲ့ကြသည်။ ဖွင့်ဆိုချက်များအရ ဝတ္ထုရေးသူက တိုက်ရိုက်ပြော၍
အသေးစိတ်သရုပ်ဖော်နည်း (အပြောနည်း)၊ ဇာတ်ဆောင်၏ ကံသုံးပါးအမူအရာမှတစ်ဆင့် ဇာတ်ဆောင်
စရိုက်ကို သရုပ်ဖော်နည်း (အပြောနည်း) တို့ဖြင့် ဇာတ်ဆောင်စရိုက် သရုပ်ဖော်ဖန်တီးလေ့ရှိကြောင်း
လေ့လာတွေ့ရှိရသည်။

၁၊ ၆။ ဝတ္ထုတိုနှင့် နောက်ခံ

ဝတ္ထုတစ်ပုဒ်တွင် နောက်ခံ၏ ပံ့ပိုးကူညီမှုသည် အဓိကကျသော အစိတ်အပိုင်း၌ ပါရှိပေသည်။
နောက်ခံကို ပေါ်လွင်အောင်ဖန်တီးရေးသားခြင်းဖြင့် ဝတ္ထုဦးတည်ချက်သည် ထင်ရှားလေးနက်စေ
သကဲ့သို့ နောက်ခံအားကောင်းပါက ဇာတ်လမ်းသည်လည်း ပို၍ရုပ်လုံးကြွလာစေသည်။ အလားတူပင်
ဇာတ်ဆောင်နှင့် နောက်ခံတို့၏ အားပြိုင်မှုဖြင့် ဇာတ်ဆောင်စရိုက်သဘာဝသည် ပို၍ပီပြင်အသက်ဝင်
လာပြီး ပရိသတ်စွဲငြိစေနိုင်သော ဇာတ်ဆောင်များအဖြစ်သို့ ရောက်ရှိလာနိုင်ကြောင်း တွေ့မြင်ရ
သည်။ နောက်ခံသည် ဝတ္ထုတစ်ပုဒ်တွင် အရေးပါသော အစိတ်အပိုင်းဖြစ်၍ မိမိတင်ပြလိုသော
ကာလအချိန်အခါ၊ စီးပွားရေး၊ လူမှုရေး၊ နိုင်ငံရေးစသည့် ရေခံမြေခံသည် သဘာဝကျရန်လိုအပ်
ကြောင်း သိန်းဖေမြင့်က-

ဇာတ်လမ်းနှင့် ဇာတ်အိမ်တည်ရန် ရေခံမြေခံလိုသည်။ ရေခံမြေခံကိုမှီ၍သာ အဆင်ပြေ
သောဇာတ်လမ်း၊ ဇာတ်အိမ်များ တည်ဆောက်နိုင်သည်။ ထိုရေခံမြေခံသည်ကား
လူမှုရေး၊ နိုင်ငံရေး၊ စီးပွားရေး စသော လူ့လောက၏ အရေးအရာများကို ထင်ဟပ်
ဖော်ပြသော ဝတ္ထုတည်ရာ မြေခံဖြစ်သည်။ ရေခံမြေခံကောင်းသည်နှင့်အမျှ ဇာတ်လမ်း
ဇာတ်အိမ်ကောင်းသည်။ ရေခံမြေခံ တင့်တယ်သည်နှင့်အမျှ ဇာတ်လမ်းဇာတ်အိမ်
တင့်တယ်သည်။ ရေခံမြေခံ တင့်တယ်ခမ်းနားသည်နှင့်အမျှ ဇာတ်လမ်းဇာတ်အိမ်
ခမ်းနားသည်။ ထို့ကြောင့် ဝတ္ထုရေးလိုပါလျှင် လူ့လောက၏ အရေးအရာများတွင်
လူ့အတွက် အဓိပ္ပာယ်ရှိသောရေခံမြေခံအကွက်ကျကျရွေးချယ်တတ်ဖို့ လိုလေသည်။
(သိန်းဖေမြင့်၊ ၁၉၆၈၊ ၁၈၃)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း၊ ဒေါက်တာထင်အောင်ကမူ-

ဘယ်နေရာဖြစ်တယ်၊ ဒီကိစ္စတွေဟာ ဘယ်မှာဖြစ်တယ်ဆိုတာ အင်္ဂလိပ်လိုတော့
ဆက်တင်လို့ခေါ်တယ်။ ဆက်တင်ဆိုတာ နောက်ခံပင်ဖြစ်တယ်။ ဥပမာ - ကပွဲကတဲ
အခါမှာ နောက်ကကားလိပ်တွေဟာ သူ့နေရာနဲ့သူ ပြောင်းလဲရသလို ရှင်ဘုရင်

ထွက်တဲ့အခါ နန်းတော်ပုံ ကားလိပ်ချရတယ်။ အဲဒီလိုပဲ ဝတ္ထုတွေမှာလည်း နောက်ခံ လိုပါတယ်။ (ဒေါက်တာထင်အောင်၊ ၁၉၄၉၊ ဟောပြောချက်)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း၊ ဝင်းငြိမ်းကလည်း-

ဝတ္ထုတွင် လူ့စရိုက်ဟာ အရေးအကြီးဆုံးပဲ၊ ကောင်းတဲ့စရိုက်၊ ဆိုးတဲ့စရိုက်၊ အဲဒီစရိုက်ဖော်တဲ့အခါ ကာလဒေသက အရေးကြီးတယ်၊ ကာလဒေသကိုလိုက်ပြီး စရိုက်တွေကြွလာတယ်၊ ပီပြင်လာတယ်၊ ဝတ္ထုရေးတဲ့အခါ လူ့စရိုက်တွေဟာ ဒေသ မှီတည်ပြီး ဖွံ့ဖြိုးပြောင်းလဲလာကြတယ်။ ကြွတက်လာတယ်။ (ဝင်းငြိမ်း၊ ၂၀၀၂၊ ၁၉၀)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း နောက်ခံ၏အရေးပါပုံကို ဖွင့်ဆိုပြခဲ့သည်။ ဖွင့်ဆိုချက်များအရ ကာလဒေသ နောက်ခံပီပြင်မှသာလျှင် ဝတ္ထုတွင်ပါဝင်သော ဇာတ်ဆောင်စရိုက်သဘာဝသည် ပီပြင်လာနိုင်ကြောင်း၊ ဇာတ်ဆောင်စရိုက်ပီပြင်မှုအတွက် နောက်ခံသည် တစ်ဖက်တစ်လမ်းမှ ပံ့ပိုးပေးနိုင်ကြောင်း တွေ့မြင် ရသည်။ ဝတ္ထုတစ်ပုဒ်တွင် ဇာတ်လမ်း၊ ဇာတ်ဆောင်တို့သည် မရှိမဖြစ် ပါရသည့်နည်းတူ နောက်ခံ ဝန်းကျင် သရုပ်ဖော်မှုသည်လည်း မရှိမဖြစ်သည့် ဝတ္ထုအတတ်ပညာတစ်ခုဖြစ်သည်။ နောက်ခံဝန်းကျင် အားကောင်းပါက ဇာတ်လမ်းသည် အသက်ဝင်လာသကဲ့သို့ ဇာတ်ဆောင်တို့၏ စရိုက်သဘာဝ သည်လည်း ပို၍ရုပ်လုံးကြွလာကြောင်း တွေ့မြင်ရသည်။

၁၊ ၆၊ ၁။ နောက်ခံအဖွဲ့ဖန်တီးမှု

ဝတ္ထုတစ်ပုဒ်တွင် ဝတ္ထုဦးတည်ချက်ကို ကောင်းစွာဖော်ညွှန်းနိုင်သော ကာလဒေသ နောက်ခံအဖွဲ့များ ပါဝင်လေ့ရှိသည်။ စာရေးသူများသည် ဝတ္ထုအများစုတွင် ဇာတ်လမ်း ဖြစ်ပျက်သည့် အချိန်ကာလ နေရာဒေသများကို ထည့်သွင်းရာ၌ စာဖတ်သူများ၏ စိတ်မျက်စိတွင် မြင်ယောင်လာစေရန် သရုပ်ဖော်ရေးသားနည်း (ဝါ) အနုစိတ်ခြယ်မှုန်းရေးသားနည်းများကို အသုံးပြု၍ ထည့်သွင်းရေးသား လေ့ရှိသည်။ အလားတူပင် စာရေးသူသည် မိမိတင်ပြလိုသော စီးပွားရေး၊ လူမှုရေး၊ အိမ်ထောင်ရေး၊ နိုင်ငံရေး စသည့် ခေတ်နောက်ခံဝန်းကျင်ကို ထည့်သွင်းရာ၌ စာရေးသူ၏ ပြောစကားဖြင့် လည်းကောင်း၊ ဝတ္ထုပါဇာတ်ဆောင်၏ ပြောစကားဖြင့်လည်းကောင်း၊ ဇာတ်ဆောင်၏ အတွေးဖြင့် လည်းကောင်း ထည့်သွင်းရေးသားလေ့ရှိကြောင်း တွေ့မြင်ရသည်။

၂။ ဝတ္ထုတိုဖန်တီးမှုအတတ်ပညာ

ဝတ္ထုရေးသူ များစွာရှိသည့်အနက် မြန်မာစာပေလောကကို ပြည်သူ့အကျိုးပြုစာပေများဖြင့် ဦးဆောင်သူ များထဲတွင် အမျိုးသမီးစာရေးဆရာမဖြစ်သော မစန္ဒာသည်လည်း တစ်ဦးအပါအဝင်ဖြစ်သည်။ စာရေးသူ၏ ဝတ္ထုတိုများသည် လေးနက်ကောင်းမွန်သော ဦးတည်ချက်များကို အခြေခံ၍ ဇာတ်လမ်း ဇာတ်ကွက် ခိုင်မာစွာဖြင့် ဇာတ်လမ်းနှင့်လိုက်ဖက်သည့် ဇာတ်ဆောင်စရိုက်များ ထည့်သွင်းရေးသား လေ့ရှိခြင်းစသော ဝတ္ထုတိုဖန်တီးမှုအတတ်ပညာ အားကောင်းလှသည့်အတွက် မြန်မာစာပေသမိုင်း တွင် စာပေတာဝန်ကျေပွန်ခဲ့သော အမျိုးသမီးစာရေးဆရာမတစ်ဦးအဖြစ် အောင်မြင်မှုရရှိခဲ့သည့် စာရေးဆရာ တစ်ဦးလည်းဖြစ်သည်။

၂၊ ၁။ နှမ်းတစ်စေ့ ကြယ်တစ်ပွင့်နှင့် မင်တစ်စက်

“နှမ်းတစ်စေ့ ကြယ်တစ်ပွင့်နှင့် မင်တစ်စက်” ဝတ္ထုတိုသည် ၁၉၈၃ ခုနှစ်၊ လူငယ်မဂ္ဂဇင်းတွင် မစန္ဒာ ရေးသားခဲ့ပြီး “မစန္ဒာ၏ ဝတ္ထုတိုများ-၂” တွင် ပါဝင်သော ဝတ္ထုတိုတစ်ပုဒ်ဖြစ်သည်။

၂၊ ၁၊ ၁။ ဦးတည်ချက်

“နှမ်းတစ်စေ့ ကြယ်တစ်ပွင့်နှင့် မင်တစ်စက်” ဝတ္ထုတိုတွင် လောကလူ့ဘောင်အတွင်းရှိ လူသားများသည် လူချင်းတူသော်လည်း ခံယူချက်၊ အသိဉာဏ်ချင်း မတူညီကြောင်း ဖော်ပြလိုရင်းဖြစ်သည်။ တစ်နည်းအားဖြင့် စည်းကမ်းမဲ့သူ၊ တာဝန်မဲ့သူများ နည်းပါးပြီး တာဝန်ယူမှု၊ တာဝန်ခံမှုနှင့်အတူ တာဝန်သိစိတ်၊ စည်းကမ်းရှိစိတ် များပြားစေလိုသော ပြုပြင်ရေး ဦးတည်ချက်အလေးကဲသော ဝတ္ထုတိုကောင်းတစ်ပုဒ်ဟု ဆိုနိုင်ပေသည်။

၂၊ ၁၊ ၂။ ဇာတ်လမ်း

ဝတ္ထုတွင်ပါဝင်သော ဇာတ်ဆောင် ‘အေးနွယ်’ သည် မိခင်ထံသို့ မကြာခဏသွားလိုသော်လည်း စိတ်သွားတိုင်းကိုယ်မပါနိုင်သော အိမ်ထောင်သည်ဘဝဖြစ်နေ၍ မရောက်ဖြစ်သည်က များလေသည်။ ထို့ကြောင့် ရုံးမသွားမီ မိခင်ထံသို့ဝင်ရန် ဈေးမှအိမ်သို့ ခပ်သုတ်သုတ်ပြန်ခဲ့ရာ ဖြတ်လမ်းဖြစ်သော လမ်းကြားထဲသို့ ဝင်မိသည်နှင့် များပြားလှသော အမှိုက်ပုံမှ အနံ့ဆိုးကို ရှူရှိုက်မိရသည်။ အမှိုက်ပစ်ရာတွင် စည်းကမ်းရှိသူက သေချာစွာ ထုပ်ပိုး၍ပစ်သော်လည်း စည်းကမ်းမဲ့သူများက ပြီးစလွယ်ပစ်တတ်သည်ကို ကြုံခဲ့ရသည်။ ထို့နောက် ရုံးသို့ ဘတ်စ်ကားစီးသွားရာတွင်လည်း ကားပျက်သည်နှင့်ကြုံရာ လူမှုရေးအသိစိတ်ဖြင့် ကားဆင်းတွန်းပေးကြသူများရှိသကဲ့သို့ မိမိနှင့်မဆိုင်သည့်နှယ် ရေသာခိုသူများနှင့်လည်း ကြုံခဲ့ရသည်။ ရုံးသို့ရောက်သည့်အခါတွင်လည်း မိမိတို့တွင် တာဝန်ရှိပါလျက် မဆိုင်သလိုနေကာ ပန်ကာပိတ်မသွားသော တာဝန်မဲ့သူများနှင့်လည်း ကြုံခဲ့ရသည့် အဖြစ်အပျက်များကို အားပြိုင်မှုများ၊ ဇာတ်ကွက်ဖန်တီးမှုများဖြင့် ဇာတ်လမ်းကို အဆုံးသတ်ထားသည်။

၂၊ ၁၊ ၃။ ဇာတ်ဆောင်

“နှမ်းတစ်စေ့ ကြယ်တစ်ပွင့်နှင့် မင်တစ်စက်” ဝတ္ထုတိုတွင်စာရေးသူသည် လောက၌ လူအမျိုးမျိုးရှိကြောင်း ဇာတ်လမ်း၏ ဦးတည်ချက်ကို ပေါ်လွင်အောင် တင်ပြထားသည်။ စည်းကမ်းရှိသူ၊ အသိစိတ်ရှိသူများ၏ ခံယူချက်မြင့်မားပုံကို ‘အေးနွယ်၊ မောင်အေးလွင်၊ မောင်လှဝေ’ တို့ဖြင့် ထင်ဟပ်ပြ၍ စည်းကမ်းမဲ့သူ၊ အသိစိတ်မရှိသူများကို ‘အိမ်ဖော်မလေး၊ အသက်သုံးဆယ်ခန့်၊ ယောက်ျားတစ်ဦး၊ စိုးမောင်’ တို့၏စရိုက်ဖြင့် ဖန်တီးခဲ့သည်။

ဇာတ်ဆောင် ‘အေးနွယ်’ သည် ဖြတ်လမ်းဖြစ်သော အမှိုက်ပုံရှေ့မှ ဖြတ်လျှောက်လာစဉ် အမှိုက်လာပစ်သော ‘မောင်အေးလွင်’ နှင့် တွေ့ဆုံခဲ့သည်။ မောင်အေးလွင်၏လက်ထဲမှ စက္ကူနှင့် ထုပ်ပြီး သားရေကွင်းပတ်ထားသော အထုပ်ကိုမြင်၍ အေးနွယ်က-

ဘာထုပ်လဲဟဲ့

ပုစွန်ခွံတွေ ဒေါ်ဒေါ်ရဲ့၊ နံနေမှာစိုးလို့

အောင်မယ်လေးဟယ်၊ အမှိုက်ပုံကိုများ နင်မို့ နံမှာစိုးတယ်

ဒီနားကအိမ်တွေ နံမှာစိုးတာပါ ဒေါ်ဒေါ်ရဲ့။ နောက်ပြီး ဒီလိုထုပ်ထားတော့ ယင်တို့
ကြက်တို့လည်း သိပ်ပြီး မအုံ၊ မအောင်းဘူးလေ၊ ဟုတ်ဘူးလား

အင်း ဟုတ်တော့ ဟုတ်သား (စန္ဒာ၊ မ၊ ၂၀၀၁၊ ၄၀)

ဟူ၍ အမှိုက်ပစ်ရာတွင် စည်းစနစ်ကျနစွာ၊ စည်းကမ်းရှိစွာဖြင့် လုပ်ဆောင်တတ်သော ဇာတ်ဆောင်
'မောင်အေးလွင်' ၏စရိုက်ကို ဇာတ်ဆောင်အချင်းချင်း အပြန်အလှန်ပြောစကားဖြင့် စာရေးသူက
ပုံဖော် ဖန်တီးပြခဲ့သည်။

စည်းကမ်းရှိသူများရှိသကဲ့သို့ စည်းကမ်းမဲ့သူများလည်းရှိကြောင်း ခံယူချက်ချင်းမတူညီသော
လူတို့၏စရိုက်ကို အမှိုက်ပုံသို့ အမှိုက်လာပစ်သော-

အမှိုက်ကိုများ စက္ကူနဲ့ထုပ်မယ် ဟုတ်လား၊ သတင်းစာစက္ကူများ အလကားမှတ်လို့၊
ရောင်းစားရင် တစ်ပိဿာ ဆယ့်နှစ်ကျပ်ရတယ်ဟဲ့ (စန္ဒာ၊ မ၊ ၂၀၀၁၊ ၄၁)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း၊

အမှိုက်ပုံပါဆိုမှ နင်က သန့်ရှင်းနေချင်လို့လား၊ လုပ်မနေနဲ့၊ နှမ်းတစ်စွဲနဲ့
ဆီမဖြစ်ဘူး (စန္ဒာ၊ မ၊ ၂၀၀၁၊ ၄၁)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း လူချင်းတူသော်လည်း ခံယူချက်ချင်းမတူညီသော စည်းကမ်းမရှိသူတို့၏စရိုက်
ကို ပွဲစားကြီးအိမ်မှ အိမ်ဖော်မလေး၏ နှုတ်ပြောစကားဖြင့် စာရေးသူက ဖန်တီးခဲ့သည်။

အေးနွယ်သည် ရုံးသို့ ဘတ်စ်ကားဖြင့်သွားရာ လမ်း၌ ကားပျက်သွားသဖြင့် ကားစပယ်ယာမှ
ဝိုင်းတွန်းပေးကြရန် အကူအညီတောင်းခဲ့သည်။ သို့ရာတွင်-

ထိုင်စရာ နေရာရထားသော အမျိုးသားခရီးသည်များကမူ တုတ်တုတ်မျှမလှုပ်။
နေရာ ပျောက်သွားမှာ စိုး၍ထင်သည်။ နေရာမရထားသော မတ်တပ် အမျိုးသား
အချို့ကပါ ပေပြီး ရပ်နေကြသည်။ (စန္ဒာ၊ မ၊ ၂၀၀၁၊ ၄၂)

ဟူ၍ စာရေးသူ၏တိုက်ရိုက်ပြောစကားဖြင့် လူမှုရေးအသိစိတ်ညံ့ဖျင်းသူများသည် ဆင်း၍ ကူညီခြင်း
မရှိကြောင်းကို စိတ်နေသဘောထားမတူညီသည့် လူတို့၏စရိုက်သဘာဝကို ထင်ဟပ်ပြခဲ့သည်။

အလားတူ-

အသက်ငါးဆယ်လောက် လူကြီးတွေတောင် အောက်ဆင်းပြီး ကားတွန်းနေကြတာ၊
သူတို့က ငယ်ငယ်ရွယ်ရွယ်နှင့် မရှက်တတ်ဘူး၊ ကြည့်ပါဦး ပေပြီးတော့ရပ်နေတယ်
(စန္ဒာ၊ မ၊ ၂၀၀၁၊ ၄၃)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း၊

တွန်းနေသူများက ပေါက်ကရအော်နေကြသော်လည်း အားစိုက်ပြီး တွန်းနေကြသည်။
အေးနွယ်သည် ကားပေါ်တွင် ထိုင်နေရသည်ကို အားနာလာသည်။ ဝင်၍ မတွန်းနိုင်
သော်လည်း သူ့အောက်သို့ ဆင်းလိုက်လျှင် ပေါင်ချိန်တစ်ရာကျော် လေးသော
သူတစ်ကိုယ်စာအလေးချိန်တော့ ပေါ့သွားမည်ဖြစ်လေသည်။ (စန္ဒာ၊ မ၊ ၂၀၀၁၊ ၄၄)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း စာနာထောက်ထားကိုယ်ချင်းစာတတ်သူနှင့် အချောင်ခိုတတ်သူတို့၏ ကွဲပြားခြားနားသော စရိုက်လက္ခဏာများကို ဇာတ်ဆောင်အေးနွယ်၏ စိတ်တွေးအမူအရာမှတစ်ဆင့် စာရေးသူက သရုပ်ဖော်ပြခဲ့သည်။

ထိုမျှမက-

ဘတ်စ်ကားစီးရတာများ ဘယ်တော့မှ အဆင်မပြေဘူး၊ ကားတွေကလည်း အစုတ်နဲ့ အပြတ်ကြီးပဲ။

ကားကစုတ်ပေမယ့် ရေသာခိုနေတဲ့ အမျိုးသားတွေကပါ ဆင်းပြီးတွန်းလိုက်ရင် နီးသွားမှာပါ ဆရာသမားရဲ့။

ကြယ်တစ်လုံးတည်းနဲ့ ထူးပြီး မလင်းပါဘူး ကိုယ့်လူရာ။ (စန္ဒာ၊ မ၊ ၂၀၀၁၊ ၄၅)

ဟူ၍ ကားစပယ်ယာလေးနှင့် အချောင်ခို၍ ကားဆင်းမတွန်းပေးသော အသက်သုံးဆယ်ခန့် ယောက်ျားတစ်ဦး၏ အပြန်အလှန်ပြောစကားဖြင့်လည်း စာရေးသူက ခံယူချက်မတူသော ရေသာခိုတတ်သော လူတို့၏စရိုက်သဘာဝကို ထင်ဟပ်ပြခဲ့သည်။

အေးနွယ် ရုံးသို့ရောက်သော်လည်း အခြားဝန်ထမ်းများ မရောက်သေးသဖြင့် ရပ်စောင့်နေခဲ့သည်။ မကြာမီ ရုံးလုလင်လေးမောင်လှဝေ ရောက်လာသဖြင့် ရုံးခန်းတွင်းသို့ ဝင်ခဲ့ကြသည်။ ရုံးထဲ၌ ပန်ကာများလည်နေသည်ကို တွေ့မြင်ရသဖြင့် လျှပ်စစ်မီတာခများကို အေးနွယ်စိတ်ဖြင့် တွက်ကြည့်နေစဉ် ပန်ကာဖွင့်ခဲ့သော စိုးမောင်ရောက်လာခဲ့သည်။ မောင်လှဝေက စိုးမောင်အား-

ပန်ကာနှစ်လုံးစလုံး တစ်ညလုံးလည်နေတာ ဦးလေးရ၊ နှမြောစရာကြီး ၊

မင်းက ဘာနှမြောတာလဲ ၊

မီတာခတွေကိုပေါ့၊

အောင်မာ-မင်းပေးတာကျနေတာပဲ၊ မင်းအဘ ရုံးကပေးနေတာကိုများ ၊

ရုံးကပေးရင်လည်း နှမြောရတာပဲပေါ့လို့၊ ဒါတွေဟာ တိုင်းပြည်ပိုက်ဆံပဲ မဟုတ်လား၊ ခွေးကောင်လေး မိကျောင်းမင်း ရေခင်းပြလို့၊ တိုင်းပြည်ပိုက်ဆံကုန်တာ မင်းအပူလား၊ ပန်ကာလေးနှစ်လုံး တစ်ညလည်တာများ အဲဒီငွေမကုန်တော့ရော ချက်ချင်း ချမ်းသာ သွားမှာ ကျနေတာပဲ၊ လုပ်မနေနဲ့၊ မင်တစ်စက်နဲ့ ပင်လယ်ရေ မပြာဘူး၊

(စန္ဒာ၊ မ၊ ၂၀၀၁၊ ၄၈)

ဟူ၍ ဇာတ်ဆောင်လှဝေနှင့် စိုးမောင်တို့၏ အပြန်အလှန်ပြောစကားမှတစ်ဆင့် တာဝန်သိစိတ်ရှိသူနှင့် မရှိသူတို့၏ ကွဲပြားခြားနားသောစရိုက်နှင့် ထိုဇာတ်ဆောင်စရိုက်များမှတစ်ဆင့် တင်ပြခဲ့သည်။ လူချင်းတူသော်လည်း ခံယူချက်ချင်း မတူညီတတ်ကြသည့် လူတို့၏ စိတ်စရိုက်ကို ဆင်ခြင်မှတ်သားဖွယ်ဖြစ်အောင် စာရေးသူက ဖန်တီးပြခဲ့သည်။

“နှမ်းတစ်စေ့ ကြယ်တစ်ပွင့်နှင့် မင်တစ်စက်” ဝတ္ထုတိုတွင်-

နှမ်းစေ့ကလေးများ အများအပြားစုမိသောအခါတွင် ဆီဖြစ်လာသည်။ အရောင်လဲ့လဲ့ရှိသော ကြယ်ပွင့်ကလေးများ စုမိသောအခါ သိပ်သည်းနက်ရှိုင်းလှသော အလင်းရောင်သည် တန်သလောက်တော့ လင်း၍လာသည်။ ထိုနည်းတူစွာ တစ်စက်တစ်စက်သော

မင်စက်ကလေးပေါင်းများစွာ စုမိလျှင် အပြောကျယ်လှသော ပင်လယ်ရေပြင်သည်
လည်း ပြာနိုင်လောက်ပါသည်။ (စန္ဒာ၊ မ၊ ၂၀၀၁၊ ၄၉)

ဟူ၍ စာရေးသူ၏ တိုက်ရိုက်ပြောစကားဖြင့် ဝတ္ထုကို အဆုံးသတ်ရေးဖွဲ့ခဲ့သည်။ လောကကြီး
အတွင်း၌ နှမ်းတစ်စေ့တည်းနှင့် ဆီမဖြစ်နိုင်သော်လည်း နှမ်းစေ့ကလေးများ စုမိပါက ဆီဖြစ်နိုင်
သည်။ ကြယ်တစ်ပွင့်တည်းနှင့် မလင်းနိုင်သော်လည်း ကြယ်ပွင့်များစုမိပါက တောက်ပသော
အလင်းရောင် ဖြစ်နိုင်သည်။ မင်တစ်စက်ဖြင့် မပြာနိုင်သော်လည်း မင်စက်များစုမိပါက ပင်လယ်ရေ
ကဲ့သို့ ပြာနိုင်သည်။ အလားတူပင် တစ်ဦးတစ်ယောက်တည်း၏ စွမ်းဆောင်မှုဖြင့် လောကကြီးကို
သာယာလှပစေရန် မဖန်တီးနိုင်သော်လည်း အများ၏ စွမ်းဆောင်မှုဖြင့် ဖန်တီးနိုင်ကြောင်း ဝတ္ထုပါ
ဇာတ်ဆောင်များ၏ စရိုက်သဘာဝများမှတစ်ဆင့် ဝတ္ထုဦးတည်ချက်သို့ရောက်အောင် ပုံဖော်ဖန်တီး
ထားကြောင်း တွေ့မြင်ရပေသည်။

၂၊ ၁၊ ၄။ နောက်ခံ

“နှမ်းတစ်စေ့ ကြယ်တစ်ပွင့်နှင့် မင်တစ်စက်” ဝတ္ထုတိုတွင် ကာလဒေသနောက်ခံဝန်းကျင် မပါဝင်
သော်လည်း ဇာတ်လမ်းကို အားလျော့မှုမရှိစေဘဲ လူမှုနောက်ခံဝန်းကျင်တစ်ခုတည်းနှင့်ပင် ဖော်ပြ
ထားသည်။ ဝတ္ထုတွင်ပါဝင်သော အဓိကဇာတ်ဆောင်အေးနွယ်၏ ဈေးသွားလမ်းရှိ အမှိုက်ပုံတွင်
တွေ့ကြုံရသော အဖြစ်အပျက်များ၊ ရုံးပေါ်တွင် တွေ့ကြုံရသော အဖြစ်အပျက်များ စသည့် ဝတ္ထု၏
ဆိုလိုရင်းဖြစ်သော လူမှုဝန်းကျင်အသီးသီးရှိ လူတို့၏ အဖြစ်အပျက်၊ စိတ်နေစိတ်ထား၊ လူမှုနောက်ခံ
တို့ကို ဆင်ခြင်ဖွယ်၊ အတုယူဖွယ်ဖြစ်အောင် ဇာတ်လမ်းဇာတ်ကွက်ဆင်၍ သရုပ်ဖော်တင်ပြထားရာ
ဇာတ်လမ်းမှာ သဘာဝယုတ္တိရှိလာစေပြီး ဝတ္ထုဦးတည်ချက်မှာလည်း ပေါ်လွင်ထင်ရှားလာရပေသည်။

ခြုံငုံသုံးသပ်ချက်

ဝတ္ထုတိုတစ်ပုဒ်တွင် “ဇာတ်လမ်း၊ ဇာတ်ဆောင်၊ နောက်ခံ” တို့သည် အရေးကြီးသော ဝတ္ထုအင်္ဂါရပ်များ
ဖြစ်၍ ဝတ္ထုတိုတစ်ပုဒ်တွင် စာရေးသူ အဓိက တင်ပြလိုသော အကြောင်းအရာအချက်အလက်သည်
ဝတ္ထုတို၏ ဦးတည်ချက်ဖြစ်ပေသည်။

မစန္ဒာ၏ “နှမ်းတစ်စေ့ ကြယ်တစ်ပွင့်နှင့် မင်တစ်စက်” ဝတ္ထုတိုတွင် လူ့သဘာဝ၊ လောက
အမြင်များကို ထင်ရှားပေါ်လွင်စွာ တွေ့မြင်ရပေသည်။ လောကကြီးအတွင်း၌ နှမ်းတစ်စေ့တည်းနှင့်
ဆီမဖြစ်နိုင်သော်လည်း နှမ်းစေ့ကလေးများ စုမိပါက ဆီဖြစ်နိုင်သည်။ ကြယ်တစ်ပွင့်တည်းနှင့် မလင်း
နိုင်သော်လည်း ကြယ်ပွင့်များစုမိပါက တောက်ပသောအလင်းရောင် ဖြစ်နိုင်သည်။ မင်တစ်စက်ဖြင့်
မပြာနိုင်သော်လည်း မင်စက်များစုမိပါက ပင်လယ်ရေကဲ့သို့ ပြာနိုင်သည်။ အလားတူပင် တစ်ဦး
တစ်ယောက်တည်း၏ စွမ်းဆောင်မှုဖြင့် လောကကြီးကို သာယာလှပစေရန် မဖန်တီးနိုင်သော်လည်း
အများ၏ စွမ်းဆောင်မှုဖြင့် ဖန်တီးနိုင်ကြောင်း ဝတ္ထုပါ ဇာတ်ဆောင်များ၏ စရိုက်သဘာဝများမှ
တစ်ဆင့် ဝတ္ထုတိုဦးတည်ချက်သို့ရောက်အောင် ပုံဖော်ဖန်တီးထားကြောင်း တွေ့မြင်ရပေသည်။
“ဇာတ်လမ်း၊ ဇာတ်ဆောင်၊ နောက်ခံ” အဖွဲ့များကို သိမ်မွေ့ကျွမ်းကျင်သော အတတ်ပညာများဖြင့်

ပေါင်းစပ်၍ ထိမိသော အရေးအသား၊ ပိုင်နိုင်သော သရုပ်ဖော်အဖွဲ့များဖြင့် လောကအမြင်ကို ပေါ်လွင်အောင် ရေးသားထားရာ ဖန်တီးမှုအတတ်ပညာ အားကောင်းသော ဝတ္ထုတိုတစ်ပုဒ်ဟု ဆိုနိုင်ပေသည်။

နိဂုံး

ဤစာတမ်းသည် ဝတ္ထုတိုတစ်ပုဒ်တွင် ပါဝင်ရမည့် ဝတ္ထုတိုအင်္ဂါရပ်များနှင့် ဝတ္ထုတိုဖန်တီးမှု အတတ်ပညာများကို စာပေရှုထောင့်မှ လေ့လာသုံးသပ်တင်ပြထားပါသည်။ ဝတ္ထုတိုတစ်ပုဒ်တွင် စာရေးသူပြောလိုသော အဓိကအကြောင်းအချက်အလက် (ဝါ) ဦးတည်ချက်ကို ထင်ရှားစွာဖော်ပြနိုင်ရန် အတွက် စာရေးသူ၏ မှန်ကန်သောစေတနာနှင့် စာရေးသူ၏ ကျွမ်းကျင်မှုအတတ်ပညာ ပေါင်းစပ် ဖန်တီးရန် လိုအပ်လှပေသည်။ စာရေးသူ၏ စေတနာနှင့် အတတ်ပညာ လိုက်ဖက်ညီညွတ်မျှတပါက ဇာတ်လမ်းအစမှအဆုံးတိုင် စာဖတ်သူ၏ သိလိုဇော (ဝါ) စိတ်ဝင်စားခြင်းအရှိန်မှာ မြင့်သထက်မြင့်လာ စေသည်။ ဇာတ်လမ်းရှေ့သို့ရှေ့လျားရန်အတွက် ဇာတ်ဆောင်များသည် အဓိကကျသကဲ့သို့ “ဇာတ်လမ်း ဖန်တီးပုံ၊ ဇာတ်ဆောင်စရိုက်ဖန်တီးပုံ၊ နောက်ခံဖန်တီးပုံ” အတတ်ပညာများမှာလည်း အရေးပါလှ ပေသည်။ ထို့ကြောင့် ဤစာတမ်းမှတစ်ဆင့် စာရေးသူ၏ စေတနာနှင့် ဝတ္ထုတိုဖန်တီးမှု စာပေ အတတ်ပညာကို လေ့လာအကဲခတ်နိုင်ပြီး ဝတ္ထုတို ဖန်တီးရေးသားလိုသူများ၊ ဝတ္ထုတို ဖတ်ရှုခံစား လိုသူများအတွက် တစ်ဖက်တစ်လမ်းမှ အထောက်အကူပေးနိုင်လိမ့်မည်ဟု ထင်မြင်ယူဆမိပါသည်။

ကျေးဇူးတင်လွှာ

သုတေသနစာတမ်းဖတ်ပွဲတွင် စာတမ်းရေးသား ဖတ်ကြားခွင့်ပြုပေးပါသော ဒေါက်တာ ရီရီဝင်း (ပါမောက္ခချုပ်၊ သမဝါယမတက္ကသိုလ်၊ သန်လျင်)၊ ဦးဦးတင်သိန်း (ဒုတိယပါမောက္ခချုပ်၊ စီမံ၊ သမဝါယမ တက္ကသိုလ်၊ သန်လျင်)၊ ဒေါ်မြင့်မြင့်စိန် (ဒုတိယပါမောက္ခချုပ်၊ သင်ကြား၊ သမဝါယမတက္ကသိုလ်၊ သန်လျင်)၊ ဒေါက်တာအေးအေးမော် (ပါမောက္ခ၊ ဌာနမှူး၊ မြန်မာစာဌာန၊ သမဝါယမတက္ကသိုလ်၊ သန်လျင်)၊ ဤစာတမ်းအတွက် လမ်းညွှန်ပြသပေးခဲ့ပါသော ဆရာမကြီး ဒေါ်စိုးမြင့် (အငြိမ်းစား၊ ပါမောက္ခ၊ ဌာနမှူး၊ မြန်မာစာဌာန၊ ရန်ကုန်အရှေ့ပိုင်းတက္ကသိုလ်) အား လည်းကောင်း၊ မြန်မာစာပေနှင့် ဝတ္ထုတိုပညာရပ်ကိုသင်ကြားပို့ချပေးခဲ့ပါသောဆရာမကြီး ဒေါက်တာခင်သန်းဦး (မမိုးမြေ) (အငြိမ်းစား၊ ပါမောက္ခ၊ ဌာနမှူး၊ မြန်မာစာဌာန၊ ပုသိမ်တက္ကသိုလ်) အားလည်းကောင်း၊ အဘက်ဘက်မှ ကူညီပေး ခဲ့ပါသော သမဝါယမတက္ကသိုလ် (သန်လျင်)၊ မြန်မာစာဌာနမှ ဆရာမများနှင့် သင်ဆရာ၊ မြင်ဆရာ၊ ကြားဆရာအပေါင်းတို့အားလည်းကောင်း ဂရုတရား ရှေ့ထား၍ လှိုက်လှိုက်လဲ့လဲ့ ကျေးဇူးတင်ရှိ ပါကြောင်း မှတ်တမ်းတင်အပ်ပါသည်။

ကျမ်းကိုးစာရင်း

- ကျော်အောင်။ (၁၉၇၉)။ နိုင်ငံခြားဝတ္ထုတို၊ ဝတ္ထုတိုစာတမ်း (ပတွဲ)၊ ရန်ကုန်စာပေဗိမာန်ပုံနှိပ်တိုက်။
- ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ (ခန့်ဖြူ)။ ရှေးဟန်ပညာနိဒါန်း၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ စိတ်ကူးချိုချိုစာအုပ်တိုက်။
- စန္ဒာ၊ မ။ (၂၀၀၁)။ ဝတ္ထုတိုများ(၂)၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ ပါရမီစာပေ။
- ဇော်ဂျီ။ (၁၉၈၄)။ သိန်းနှင့်ကျားဋီကာ၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ ခေတ်ညွန့်စာပေ။
- ဇော်ဂျီ။ (၂၀၀၄)။ ရသစာပေအဖွင့်နိဒါန်း၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ အင်ကြင်းဦးပုံနှိပ်တိုက်။
- တာရာ၊ (ဒုဂ်-)။ (၁၉၆၉)။ ဒုတိယအကြိမ်၊ စာပေသဘောတရား၊ စာပေဝေဖန်ရေး၊ စာပေလှုပ်ရှားမှု၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ နံ့သာတိုက်။
- ထင်၊ မောင်။ (၁၉၇၉)။ သိပ္ပံဝတ္ထုတိုစာတမ်းများ၊ ဝတ္ထုတိုစာတမ်း (ဒုတိယတွဲ)၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ စာပေဗိမာန် ပုံနှိပ်တိုက်။
- ထင်အောင်(ဒေါက်တာ-)။ (၁၉၄၉)။ ဝတ္ထုရေးဆရာများ သိသင့်သိထိုက်သော အချက်များ၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ စာပေဗိမာန်ပုံနှိပ်တိုက်။
- နန္ဒမိတ်(တက္ကသိုလ်-)။ (၁၉၆၃)။ စာရေးချင်သောသူများသို့၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ မြစာပေ။
- ဘုန်းနိုင်(တက္ကသိုလ်-)။ (၁၉၈၁)။ ဝတ္ထုရှည်စာတမ်းများ (ပတွဲ)၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ စာပေဗိမာန်ပုံနှိပ်တိုက်။
- ဘုန်းနိုင်(တက္ကသိုလ်-)။ (၂၀၀၄)။ ဒုတိယအကြိမ်၊ ဘုန်းနိုင်အတွေး၊ ဘုန်းနိုင်အမြင်၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ ကံ့ကော်ဝတ်ရည် စာပေ။
- မိုးမြေ၊ မ။ (၂၀၁၇)။ ဝတ္ထုတိုသဘောတရား၊ ဝတ္ထုတိုဖန်တီးရေးသားမှုအတတ်ပညာ၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ စိုးမိုးလွင်မိသားစုစာပေ။
- မင်းကျော်။ (၁၉၇၉)။ ဝတ္ထုတိုစာတမ်းများ (ပတွဲ)၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ စာပေဗိမာန်ပုံနှိပ်တိုက်။
- မင်းယုဝေ။ (၁၉၇၉)။ ဝတ္ထုတိုစာတမ်းများ (ပတွဲ)၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ စာပေဗိမာန်ပုံနှိပ်တိုက်။
- မြန်မာအဘိဓာန်၊ (၁၉၉၁)။ စက်တင်ဘာလ၊ ပထမအကြိမ်၊ မြန်မာစာအဖွဲ့၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့။
- ဝင်းငြိမ်း။ (၂၀၀၂)။ နှစ်ကြောင်းရေး တစ်ကြောင်းခြစ်၊ ဒုတိယအကြိမ်၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ အရုဏ်ကောင်းကင် စာပေ။
- သူရိယကန္တီ။ (၁၉၆၇)။ ဝတ္ထုရေးလိုသော်၊ ဒုတိယအကြိမ်၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ လင်းယုန်စာပေ။
- သိန်းဖေမြင့်။ (၁၉၆၇)။ တိုက်ပွဲဝင်စာများ၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ လွင်စာပေ။
- အောင်သင်း။ (၁၉၇၈)။ မဂ္ဂဇင်းဝတ္ထုတိုအချို့လေ့လာချက်၊ ရန်ကုန်မြို့၊ ရေတမာစာပေ။

မောင်ထင်၏ ကိုဒေါင်းဝတ္ထုမှ ဘာသာစကားအသုံးနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှု

ဝါဝါခင်^၁

စာတမ်းအကျဉ်း

ဤစာတမ်းသည် မောင်ထင်၏ ကိုဒေါင်းဝတ္ထုလာ နေ့စဉ်ပြောစကားတို့မှ အသံအလှဆင်ခြင်း၊ စကားအသုံးအနှုန်း အလှဆင်ခြင်း၊ အလင်္ကာအဆင်တန်ဆာဆင်ခြင်း၊ ဝါကျအလှဆင်ခြင်းတို့၏ အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှုတို့မှ စာရေးသူနှင့် ကိုဒေါင်းတို့၏ ရင်းနှီးချစ်ခင်သည့်အကြောင်း၊ ကိုဒေါင်း ရိုးသားသည့်အကြောင်း၊ မဟုတ်လျှင် မခံတတ်သည့် ကိုဒေါင်း၏အကြောင်းများကို ဖော်ပြသည့် နေ့စဉ်သုံးပြောစကားများကို ဘာသာဗေဒ ဘာသာရပ်ခွဲတစ်ခုဖြစ်သော ဘာသာဗေဒ၏ ရေးဟန်ရှုထောင့်၊ အတ္ထုဗေဒရှုထောင့်တို့ဖြင့် လေ့လာတင်ပြ ထားပါသည်။ ဤသို့ လေ့လာခြင်းဖြင့် စာရေးသူ မောင်ထင်၏ ရေးဟန်၊ စတိုင်ကို ခံစားသိရှိနိုင်ပြီး မြန်မာဘာသာစကားနှင့် စာပေကိုလည်း ပိုမိုရေးနိုင်၊ ပြောနိုင်လာမည်ဖြစ်သည်။

သော့ချက်ဝေါဟာရများ- ဘာသာဗေဒ၊ အတ္ထုဗေဒ၊ အနက်အဓိပ္ပာယ်၊ အသံအလှ၊ စကားအသုံးအနှုန်း၊ အလှ၊ ဝါကျ အလှ

နိဒါန်း

ဤစာတမ်းသည် မောင်ထင်၏ ကိုဒေါင်းဝတ္ထုတိုများမှ ဘာသာစကားအသုံးနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှုကို လေ့လာထားသော စာတမ်းဖြစ်ပါသည်။ ကိုဒေါင်းဝတ္ထုပါ နေ့စဉ်ပြောဆိုသုံးနှုန်းနေသော စကားများသည် ပြောဆိုအသုံးပြုသူ၏ လေသံ အမူအရာ စိတ်ခံစားချက်ပေါ် မူတည်၍ စကားလုံးများသုံးနှုန်းသည်ကို တွေ့ရှိရလေ့ရှိပါသည်။ နားထောင်သူ၊ ဖတ်သူတို့ကို ဆွဲဆောင်ရာတွင် အသံအလှဆင်သည်။ စကားအသုံးအနှုန်း၊ အလင်္ကာအသုံး၊ ဝါကျအသုံးတို့နှင့် ဘာသာစကားကိုလှပအောင် စွမ်းဆောင်နိုင်သည်ကို ဘာသာစကားရှုထောင့်မှ ရှင်းလင်းဖော်ပြ သုတေသနပြု၍ လေ့လာထားခြင်းဖြစ်ပါသည်။ ထိုသို့လေ့လာရာတွင် ဘာသာဗေဒ၊ အတ္ထုဗေဒ၊ လူမှုဘာသာဗေဒများကို လေ့လာခဲ့ပါသည်။

ဘာသာစကားတာဝန်များကို လေ့လာကြည့်ရာ၌ ပညာရှင်အသီးသီး၏ ဘာသာစကားတာဝန်များမှာ တူညီမှုရှိသကဲ့သို့ မတူညီမှုရှိသည်ကိုလည်း တွေ့ရပါသည်။ ဘာသာစကားတာဝန်များ၏ ခေါ်ဝေါ်သော ဝေါဟာရများသည် မည်သို့ပင်ကွဲပြားသော်လည်း လိချ်၏ ဘာသာစကားတာဝန် (၅)မျိုးသည် အားလုံးကို ခြုံငုံမိစေသည့်အတွက် စာတမ်းပြုသူအနေနှင့် ယင်းမူကိုယူပါမည်။ ၎င်းမူကို စာတမ်း၌ယူခြင်းမှာ ဘာသာစကားတာဝန်များသည် ချဲ့နိုင်ကျဉ်းနိုင်သော်လည်း (၅)မျိုးထက်ပို၍ ကျဉ်းနိုင်ရန် မလွယ်ကူခြင်းကြောင့် ဖြစ်ပါသည်။

စာရေးသူမောင်ထင်သည် မြန်မာစာပေလောကတွင် ထင်ရှားသည့် စာရေးဆရာတစ်ဦးဖြစ်သည်။ ဆရာ့ကို ၁၉၀၉ ခုနှစ်၊ မတ်လ (၂၁) ရက်နေ့တွင် အဖ ဦးတရောင်၊ အမိ ဒေါ်စိန်ပွင့်တို့မှ ဧရာဝတီတိုင်း၊ လပွတ္တာမြို့၌ ဖွားမြင်ခဲ့သည်။ ၁၉၃၃ ခုနှစ်တွင် ရန်ကုန်တက္ကသိုလ်မှ ဝိဇ္ဇာဘွဲ့ရရှိပြီး ၁၉၃၅ ခုနှစ်တွင် မြောင်းမြမြို့ တိုင်းရင်းသားကျောင်းတွင် အထက်တန်းပြဆရာအဖြစ် စတင်အမှုထမ်းခဲ့ပြီး တိုင်းပြည်တာဝန်များကို ရာထူးအမျိုးမျိုး၊ တာဝန်အမျိုးမျိုးဖြင့် ကျေပွန်စွာ ထမ်းဆောင်ကာ

^၁ လက်ထောက်ကထိက၊ မြန်မာစာဌာန၊ သမဝါယမတက္ကသိုလ် (သန်လျင်)

စာပေနယ်တွင်းသို့ ဝင်ရောက်ခဲ့သည်။ ၁၉၄၇ ခုနှစ်တွင် ဆရာသည် နိုင်ငံအကျိုးပြုစာ များစွာကို ရေးသားထုတ်ဝေခဲ့ပြီး ၁၉၄၇ ခုနှစ်တွင် ထုတ်ဝေခဲ့သည့် ဆရာ၏ ငဘ ဝတ္ထုရှည်သည် ဂျပန်ခေတ် မြန်မာ့လယ်သမားဘဝသာမက လယ်သမား၏ ဘဝစရိုက်၊ ဆင်းရဲမွဲတေမှုများကို ထိုခေတ် မြန်မာ့ အလုပ်သမားများ၊ အခြေခံလူတန်းစားများ၏ဘဝကိုပါ ဖော်ညွှန်းသည့် ဝတ္ထုကောင်းတစ်ပုဒ် ဖြစ်သည်။ ဆရာ၏ ဝတ္ထုများ ထင်ရှားခြင်းမှာ ဆရာ၏ ဘာသာစကားအလှဖန်တီးမှုကို အသုံးပြုခြင်းကြောင့် ဖြစ်သည်။ ဘဝအထွေထွေ၏ စရိုက်များပေါ်လွင်အောင် စကားလုံးအလှများဖြင့် ဝေါဟာရကြွယ်ကြွယ် အသုံးပြုထားခြင်းကြောင့်ဖြစ်သည်။

ထိုဝတ္ထုများအနက် ငဘဝတ္ထုကဲ့သို့ပင် အခြေခံလူတန်းစားတစ်ရပ်ကိုဖော်ပြသည့် ကျေးလက်နေ ကိုဒေါင်း၏ဝတ္ထုမှာ ထင်ရှားသည်။ အလှဖန်တီးမှုအားကောင်းလှသည့် ဝတ္ထုများထဲမှ ဤစာတမ်းတွင် စာတမ်းပြုသူအနေဖြင့် မောင်ထင်၏ “ကိုဒေါင်းဝတ္ထု” ကို လေ့လာတင်ပြပါမည်။ ထိုသို့ လေ့လာရာတွင် လိချ်၏ဘာသာစကားတာဝန်(၅)မျိုးအနက်အလှဖန်တီးမှုတာဝန်ကိုအခြေခံ၍လည်းကောင်း၊ ရေးဟန် ပညာနိဒါန်း(ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ဇနုဖြူ၊ ၂၀၁၁)ကို အခြေခံ၍လည်းကောင်း လေ့လာထားပါသည်။ ထိုသို့ လေ့လာရာတွင် ကိုဒေါင်းဝတ္ထု (၉) ပုဒ်မှ အသံအလှနှင့်အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှု ဆိုင်ရာဝတ္ထုတို (၂) ပုဒ်၊ စကားအသုံးအနှုန်းအလှနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှုဆိုင်ရာ ဝတ္ထုတို(၄)ပုဒ်၊ အလင်္ကာအဆင်တန်ဆာအလှ နှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှုဆိုင်ရာ ဝတ္ထုတို (၄)ပုဒ်၊ ဝါကျအလှနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှုဆိုင်ရာဝတ္ထုတို (၆)ပုဒ် တို့ကို လေ့လာတင်ပြထားပါသည်။

ရည်ရွယ်ချက်

ဘာသာစကားကိုပြောဆိုရာတွင် အနက်အဓိပ္ပာယ်သည် အလွန်အရေးကြီးသည်။ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ကို ဖော်ဆောင်သည့် အပြန်အလှန်ပြောစကားများ ပြောရာ၊ ရေးရာတွင် သုံးသည့် စကားသံ၊ စကား အသုံးအနှုန်း၊ ဝါကျကလေးများ လှပနေမှသာလျှင် ပြောသူ၊ ရေးသူ၏ ဆိုလိုချက်ပေါ်လွင်စေမည် ဖြစ်သည်။ ထိုအကြောင်းကို ‘မောင်ထင်၏ ကိုဒေါင်းဝတ္ထု’ မှ စကားသံအလှ၊ စကားအသုံးအနှုန်း အလှ၊ ဝါကျအလှတို့ဖြင့် စာဖတ်သူအား ဆွဲဆောင်ရေးသားထားသည်ကို နှစ်သက်ဖွယ်ခံစားသိရှိ စေလိုခြင်းဖြစ်သည်။ မြန်မာဘာသာစကားကို ပိုမိုကျွမ်းကျင်စွာ ပြောနိုင်ရေးနိုင်လာစေရန်လည်း ရည်ရွယ်သည်။

၁။ ဘာသာစကား

ဘာသာစကားသည် လူတစ်ဦးနှင့်တစ်ဦးကို လမ်းကြောင်းဖွင့်ပေးသော ဆက်သွယ်ရေးပစ္စည်း ဖြစ်သည်။ (ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ဇနုဖြူ၊ ၂၀၀၈၊ ၁၀)

တစ်ဦးနှင့်တစ်ဦး ဘာသာစကားဖြင့် ဆက်သွယ်သည်။ ယင်းဖြစ်စဉ်ကို လေ့လာကြည့်လျှင် ပြောသူက မိမိပြောချင်သည့်အကြောင်းကို ဘာသာစကားဖြင့် ပြောဆိုသည့်အခါ အပြောဘာသာစကား ပြောသူ၊ နာသူ ဆက်သွယ်ခြင်းမျိုးဖြစ်ပြီး အရေးဘာသာစကားဖြင့် ဆက်သွယ်လျှင် ရေးသူ၊ ဖတ်သူ အကြား ဆက်သွယ်ရေးလမ်းကြောင်းတစ်လျှောက် ဘာသာစကားဖြင့် ဆက်သွယ်ခြင်းမျိုးဖြစ်သည်။

၁၊ ၁။ အနက်အဓိပ္ပာယ်ဟူသည်

အဓိပ္ပာယ် - အဓိပ္ပာယ်/အဓိပ္ပာယ်/န-ဆိုလိုရင်းသဘော။ [ပါ၊ အဓိပ္ပာယ်]

(မြန်မာအဘိဓာန်၊ ၁၉၉၁၊ ၄၀၇)

အနက် - အနက်/န-မူရင်းအဓိပ္ပာယ်။

၊ ဝိ - အစုအပေါင်းမှ တစ်စိတ်တစ်ဒေသကို ထုတ်နုတ်ပြရာတွင် သုံးသောစကားလုံး။

(မြန်မာအဘိဓာန်၊ ၁၉၉၁၊ ၄၀၉)

အထက်ပါဖွင့်ဆိုချက်များအရ အနက်အဓိပ္ပာယ်ဟူသည် မူရင်းအဓိပ္ပာယ်။ ဆိုလိုရင်းသဘော။ တို့ပင်ဖြစ်သည်ဟု ဆိုနိုင်ပါသည်။

၁၊ ၂။ အတ္ထဗေဒ၏ အရေးပါပုံ

ဘာသာစကားတစ်ခု၏ နယ်ပယ်အတွင်း စကားလုံးများ၏ အနက်အဓိပ္ပာယ်ချင်း ဆက်သွယ်မှုများ၊ ဝါကျများ၏ အနက်အဓိပ္ပာယ်ချင်း ဆက်သွယ်မှုများသည် အတ္ထဗေဒ၏ လုပ်ငန်းတာဝန်များ ဖြစ်သည်။ (ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ခန့်ဖြူ၊ ၂၂)

၁၊ ၃။ ဘာသာစကားတာဝန်ဆိုင်ရာ အယူအဆများ

လူတစ်ဦးနှင့်တစ်ဦး ဆက်ဆံရေးချောမွေ့စေရန် ပေါင်းကူးပေးသည့်အရာမှာ ဘာသာစကားဖြစ်သည်။ ဘာသာစကားဖြင့် ဆက်သွယ်ကြရသည်။ ဆက်သွယ်မှုဆိုင်ရာ အခြေခံအချက်များကို မူတည်၍ ဘာသာစကား၏ အသုံးပြုပုံများ ကွဲပြားခြားနားသည်။

ဂျော့ဖရီလီချီ (Geoffrey Leech) ၏ ယူဆချက်တွင် ဘာသာစကားဖြစ်ပေါ်စေရန် ပြောသူနှင့် နာသူ ရှိရပါသည်။ ပြောသူ (သို့မဟုတ်) ရေးသူသည် နာသူ (သို့မဟုတ်) ဖတ်သူထံသို့ အကြောင်းအရာ တစ်ခုခုကို ဘာသာစကားဖြင့် ဆက်သွယ်ရေးလမ်းကြောင်းအတိုင်း ပို့ဆောင်ပေးပါသည်။ တစ်ဦးနှင့် တစ်ဦးဆက်သွယ်ရာတွင် ပြောသူ (သို့မဟုတ်) ရေးသူ၊ နာသူ (သို့မဟုတ်) ဖတ်သူ၊ ဆက်သွယ်ရေး လမ်းကြောင်း၊ အကြောင်းအရာ၊ ဘာသာစကားဟူသော အချက်များသည် ဆက်သွယ်မှုဆိုင်ရာ အခြေခံအချက်များ ဖြစ်သည်။ ဤအချက်များကို မူတည်၍ လီချီက ဘာသာစကားတာဝန်ကို အောက်ပါအတိုင်း (၅) မျိုး ဖွင့်ဆိုထားသည်။

(၁) အသိပေးမှုတာဝန် (informational function)

(၂) ဖော်ပြမှုတာဝန် (expressive function)

(၃) လမ်းညွှန်မှုတာဝန် (directive function)

(၄) လောကဝတ်တာဝန် (phatic function)

(၅) အလှဖန်တီးမှုတာဝန် (aesthetic function)

တို့ဖြစ်ပါသည်။ (ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ခန့်ဖြူ၊ ၂၀၀၈၊ ၄၆)

၁။ အသိပေးမှုတာဝန်

လူတစ်ဦးနှင့်တစ်ဦး နေ့စဉ်နှင့်အမျှ ဘာသာစကားကို အသုံးပြု၍ ပြောဆိုရေးသားဆက်သွယ်ရာတွင် သိစရာအကြောင်းအရာ အချက်အလက်များကို အသိပေးသောကိစ္စသည် အများဆုံးဖြစ်ကြောင်း တွေ့ရသည်။ လူတစ်ယောက်နှင့် တစ်ယောက် ဘာသာစကားဖြင့်ဆက်သွယ်ရာတွင် ပြောသူက မိမိသိစေလိုသော အကြောင်းအရာ အချက်အလက်များကို နားထောင်သူသိအောင် စကားဖြင့် ပြောဆိုဆက်သွယ်သည်။ စာအရေးအသားပေါ်ပေါက်လာသောအခါ စာဖြင့်လည်း ဆက်သွယ်သည်။

နေ့စဉ် သတင်းစာပါဖြစ်ရပ်များ၊ ပညာပေးစာများမှ သိစရာ၊ မှတ်စရာ၊ ပညာရပ်ဆိုင်ရာ အချက်အလက်တို့သည် အသိပေးမှုဆိုင်ရာ ထင်ရှားသော သာဓကများ ဖြစ်ပါသည်။

သာဓက - မန္တလေးရထား မနက်ကိုးနာရီဆိုက်တယ်။

စသည့် ဖော်ပြချက်များသည် အသိပေးမှု အသုံးအနှုန်းများ ဖြစ်သည်။ ပြောသူ၊ ရေးသူ၏ ထင်မြင်ချက်၊ ခံစားချက်မပါဘဲ အကြောင်းအရာကို ဓမ္မဓိဋ္ဌာန်ကျကျ ဖော်ပြခြင်းဖြစ်သည့်အတွက် ဖော်ပြချက်သည် မှန်သည်မှားသည်ကို စမ်းသပ်စစ်ဆေး၍ရသည်။

၂။ ဖော်ပြမှုတာဝန်

ဖော်ပြမှုတာဝန်သည် ပြောသူ၊ ရေးသူတို့၏ ခံစားမှုသဘောထားနှင့် သက်ဆိုင်ပါသည်။ ပြောသူ၊ ရေးသူအပေါ် အားပြိုင်သောတာဝန်ဖြစ်သည်။ စိတ်ခံစားမှုကို ဖော်ပြသော အာမေဓိတ်များ ပါဝင်သည်-

သာဓက - အို- ဖြစ်မှဖြစ်ရလေ။

ယင်းသာဓကတို့တွင် ပြောသူ၏ခံစားမှုထင်ဟပ်နေသည်။

၃။ လမ်းညွှန်မှုတာဝန်

လမ်းညွှန်မှုတာဝန်သည် ပြောသူ၊ ရေးသူက နာသူ၊ ဖတ်သူကို လွှမ်းမိုးလမ်းညွှန်မှုနှင့် သက်ဆိုင်သည်။ နေ့စဉ်နှင့်အမျှ ပြောဆိုရေးသားသုံးနှုန်းနေကြသောစေခိုင်းခြင်း၊ အမိန့်ပေးခြင်း၊ သတိပေးခြင်း၊ အကြံပေးခြင်း၊ တားမြစ်ခြင်း၊ လမ်းညွှန်ခြင်း၊ အသိပေးခြင်း၊ တောင်းပန်ခြင်း၊ မေတ္တာရပ်ခံခြင်း အစရှိသည့် စကားလုံးများအားလုံး အကျုံးဝင်ပါသည်။

သာဓက - နိုင်ငံတော်အလံကို အလေးပြု၊ မတ်တပ်ရပ်၊ ထွက်သွား၊

ဟူသော အသုံးမျိုးတို့သည် လမ်းညွှန်မှုတာဝန်များကို ဖော်ပြနေသည်။

၄။ လောကဝတ်တာဝန်

လောကဝတ်တာဝန်သည် ပြောသူနာသူတို့၏ ဆက်သွယ်ရေးလမ်းကြောင်းပွင့်စေရန် အသုံးပြုမှုနှင့် ဆိုင်သည်။ သုံးနှုန်းသော စကားအဓိပ္ပာယ်ထက် တစ်ယောက်နှင့်တစ်ယောက် စကားပြောနေသည့် အတွက် ဆက်သွယ်ရေးလမ်းကြောင်း ချောမွေ့ပြေပြစ်နေခြင်းဟူသောအချက် ပါဝင်သည်။ တစ်ဦးနှင့် တစ်ဦး တွေ့သည့်အခါ နှုတ်ဆက်လေ့ရှိသည်။

သာဓက - ထမင်းစားပြီးပြီလား၊ နေကောင်းပါရဲ့လား၊ ဘယ်ကပြန်လာလဲ။

ဘာသာစကားတာဝန်တို့၏ တူညီမှုနှင့် ခြားနားမှုတွင် ပညာရှင်များ၏ ဘာသာစကားဆိုင်ရာ အယူအဆများသည် အရေအတွက်အားဖြင့် တူညီမှုရှိသကဲ့သို့ ခြားနားမှုလည်းရှိပါသည်။ အသုံးပြုသော ဝေါဟာရများသည် ထပ်တူကျသည်လည်း ရှိပါသည်။ ကွဲလွဲသည်လည်း ရှိပါသည်။ ဘာသာစကား တာဝန်အသီးသီးကို လေ့လာကြည့်ပါက လေ့လာသော ဘာသာရပ်နယ်ပယ်ပေါ်မူတည်၍ (၃)မျိုး၊ (၅)မျိုး၊ (၆)မျိုး၊ (၇)မျိုးဟူ၍ တွေ့ရှိရပါသည်။ ယင်းအမျိုးအစားများသည် သဘောတရားတူသည် ရှိသကဲ့သို့ ခြားနားမှုရှိသည်ကိုလည်း တွေ့ရှိရပါသည်။

၅။ အလှူဖန်တီးမှုတာဝန်

အလှူဖန်တီးမှုတာဝန်သည် ပြောဆိုရေးသားသည့် ဘာသာစကားကို နှစ်သက်ဖွယ်ဖြစ်အောင် လှလှပပ သုံးခြင်းနှင့် သက်ဆိုင်သည်။ တစ်ဦးနှင့်တစ်ဦး ဆက်သွယ်ရာတွင် ဆက်သွယ်ရေးပစ္စည်းဖြစ်သော ဘာသာစကားကို စိတ်ဝင်စားဖွယ် နှစ်သက်ဖွယ်ဖြစ်အောင် ဖန်တီးသုံးနှုန်းခြင်း ဖြစ်ပါသည်။

သာကေ - မောတော့မောတာပေါ့၊ ဒါပေမဲ့ မမောဘူး။
ချစ်၍စွန့်သွားတဲ့မင်းကို၊ စွန့်၍ချစ်သွားမယ်လေ။
လူပြောမသန်၊ လူသန်မပြော။
လိမ္မော်ရောင်တနင်္ဂနွေ။
တောရိပ်၊ တောင်ရိပ်
ရေရိပ်မြေရိပ်၊ နေရိပ်စမ်းရိပ်
မှန်စီတန်ဆောင်းရိပ်၊ ဂူထွတ်မှောင်ရိပ်။ (တာရာ၊ ဒဂုန်၊ ၂၀၀၅၊ ၂၁၂)

ဟူသော ဒဂုန်တာရာ၏ “ရင်ခုန်သံရတုသဘင်” ကဗျာတွင် ဘာသာစကား၏ အလှကွက်ကို ဖော်ထုတ်ထားပါသည်။ အလှူဖန်တီးမှုတာဝန်သည် သီချင်းကဗျာအမျိုးအစားဝင် ကဗျာဆန်သော စကားပြေများတွင် တွေ့နိုင်ပါသည်။

အသိပေးမှုတာဝန်သည် ဘာသာစကားကို ပြောဆိုသည့်အကြောင်းအရာဖြစ်၏။ ဖော်ပြမှု တာဝန်သည် ပြောသူရေးသူနှင့် သက်ဆိုင်ပါသည်။ လမ်းညွှန်မှုတာဝန်သည် နားထောင်သူ၊ ဖတ်သူ နှင့် သက်ဆိုင်ခြင်းဖြစ်သည်။ လောကဝတ်တာဝန်သည် စကားပြောသူနှင့် နာသူ၏ ဆက်သွယ်ရေး လမ်းကြောင်းဖြစ်၏။ အလှူဖန်တီးမှုတာဝန်သည် ဘာသာစကားပြောဆိုရာ၌ လှပစွာသုံးခြင်း ဖြစ်သည်။

၂။ အလှူဖန်တီးမှုအသုံး

အလှူဖန်တီးမှုအသုံးသည် တစ်ယောက်နှင့်တစ်ယောက် ဆက်သွယ်သော ဘာသာစကား ဆိုင်ရာ အသုံးဖြစ်သည်။ ဘာသာစကား၏အလှကြောင့် နှစ်သက်မှုဖြစ်လာသည်။ ရသစာပေ၌ တွေ့နိုင် သည်။ ဘာသာစကားကို လှပစေရန် အလင်္ကာ အဆင်တန်ဆာပြု၏။ ထို့ကြောင့် ဘာသာစကား အသုံးသည် တစ်မျိုးတစ်ဖုံ ထူးခြားသွား၍ စိတ်ဝင်စားဖွယ် စွဲမက်ဖွယ်ကောင်းပါသည်။ (Leech, 1974, 49.)

လှပမှုကို အဓိပ္ပာယ်ဖွင့်ဆိုရာ၌ အလှတရားသည် ကြည့်သူ၊ မြင်သူ နှစ်ဦးစလုံးနှင့် သက်ဆိုင်သည်။ ကြည့်သူ၊ မြင်သူဖက်မှ သုံးခြင်းဖြစ်၍ အနုပညာလက်ရာဖြစ်သည်။

၂။ ၁။ အလှဖန်တီးမှုအမျိုးအစား

အလှဖန်တီးမှုအမျိုးအစားများကို စာပေအဖွဲ့များတွင် တွေ့နိုင်သည်။ စာပေသည် ဘာသာစကားဖြင့် တည်ဆောက်ဖွဲ့စည်းထားသော အဆောက်အအုံဖြစ်သည်။ စာပေကို ဘာသာစကားဖြင့် တည်ဆောက်ရသည်။ စာပေသည် ကောင်းစွာအသုံးပြုထားသော ဘာသာစကားဖြစ်သည်ဟူသော ဖွင့်ဆိုချက်က ဘာသာစကား၏ အရေးပါမှုကို ဖော်ပြလျက်ရှိသည်။ (ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ဓနုဖြူ၊ ၂၀၁၁၊ ၅၇)

စာပေသုံးစကားမှာ အချက်အလက်သက်သက်ကိုသာ ဖော်ပြသည်မဟုတ်။ စိတ်လှုပ်ရှားခံစားမှုများကိုပါ ဖော်ပြသည်။ အနက်အဓိပ္ပာယ် နှစ်မျိုးသုံးမျိုးထွက်နိုင်သည်။ နောက်ကွယ်တွင် စိတ်လှုပ်ရှား ခံစားမှုဆိုင်ရာ အနက်သဘောများပါ တွဲဖက်ကပ်ပါနိုင်သည်။ အနက်အဓိပ္ပာယ် ကြွယ်ဝသည်။ ရေးသူ၏ လေသံသဘောထားတို့ကိုလည်း ပြသည်။ စာဖတ်သူ စိတ်လှုပ်ရှားခံစားရအောင် စေတနာများ နိုးကြားလာအောင် ဆွဲဆောင်ရသော စကားမျိုးဖြစ်သည့်အလျောက် လှပနေတတ်သည်။ ချိုသာပြေပြစ်စွာ တွဲဖွဲ့ထားသော စကားများဖြစ်နေတတ်သည်။ စကားများကိုယ်တိုင်က လှပနေသည့်အတွက် စာဖတ်သူကို စိတ်ဝင်စားဖွယ်ဖြစ်အောင် ဆွဲဆောင်ထားနိုင်စွမ်းရှိသည်။ (ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ၁၉၇၇၊ ၅၄)

ဘာသာစကား၏ အလှဖန်တီးမှုအသုံးကို လေ့လာကြည့်လျှင်-

(၁) အသံအလှ

(၂) စကားအသုံးအနှုန်းအလှ

(၃) အလင်္ကာအဆင်တန်ဆာအလှ

(၄) ဝါကျအလှ

ဟူ၍ အမျိုးအစား ခွဲခြားကြည့်နိုင်သည်။

၂။ ၁။ ၁။ အလှဖန်တီးမှုအသုံးနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှု

အလှဖန်တီးမှုအသုံးသည် တစ်ယောက်နှင့်တစ်ယောက်ဆက်သွယ်သော ဘာသာစကားဆိုင်ရာအသုံး ဖြစ်သည်။ ဘာသာစကားကို အလှဆင်သည့် အလင်္ကာအဆင်တန်ဆာများကြောင့် ဘာသာစကားသည် တစ်မျိုးတစ်ဖုံထူးခြား၍ စိတ်ဝင်စားဖွယ် စွဲမက်ဖွယ်ကောင်းလာပါသည်။

၂။ ၂။ အသံအလှနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှု

ဘာသာစကား၏ အလှဖန်တီးမှုတွင် အသံအလှသည် အရေးပါသည်။ ဘာသာစကားတွင် အခြေခံအားဖြင့် ဗျည်းသံနှင့် သရသံတို့ရှိသည်။ ဗျည်းသံသည် သူချည်းသက်သက် အသံထွက်၍မရ။ သရသံနှင့်ပေါင်းမှ အသံထွက်သည်။ သရသံကို တက်ကျသံတစ်ခုနှင့် အသံထွက်ရသည်။ ယင်းအင်္ဂါသုံးရပ် ပေါင်းစပ်မှ အသံထွက်၍ရသည်။ ထွက်လာသောအသံများကို တွဲစပ်လိုက်သည့်အခါ

အသံတစ်သံ ချင်း၏ အရည်အသွေးသာမက အသံချင်းပေါင်းဖွဲ့မှုကြောင့် ဖြစ်ပေါ်လာသော အရည်အသွေးများပါ ပေါ်လွင်လာရသည်။

အသံအလှနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်ရာတွင် စာဖတ်သူကို ရသပေးရာတွင် နှစ်သက်လာစေရန် နှစ်သက်ဖွယ်အလှကို အသံဖြင့် ဖန်တီးရသည်။ အသံအလှကို နေ့စဉ်ပြောစကားများရှိ အသံအတွဲအစပ် များထဲမှ တွေ့မြင်နိုင်ပါသည်။ စာဖတ်သူ နှစ်သက်လာစေရန် အသံဖြင့် ဖန်တီးရာတွင် ဗျည်းသံရော သရသံပါတူသည့် အသံများကို နီးနီးကပ်ကပ် တွဲစပ်ရေးသည့်အသုံးသည် အတွင်ကျယ်ဆုံး အသုံး ဖြစ်သည်။

သာဓက - အချစ်ဦးကိုမမေ့စကောင်း။ ငယ်ကချစ်အနှစ်တစ်ရာမမေ့သာ။
မည်မျှပင်အရပ်ဆိုးဆိုး။ မည်မျှပင် သဘောပုပ်ပုပ် မည်မျှပင်
အကျည်းတန်တန် အချစ်ဦးမှန်လာလျှင် နောင်မှအကြောင်း
မသင့်၍ ခွဲခွာတန်က ခွဲခွာကြရမည်။ မေ့ဖို့မူကား မဖြစ်နိုင်။
ဧရာထောင်း၍ ဖွတ်ဖွတ်ကြေလျက် ရှိစေကာမူ ငယ်ချစ်၏
အရိပ်အယောင်တို့မှာ ကာလတည်းဟူသော မြူမှုန်တွေ
အကြားမှ ဝိုးတိုးဝါးတား ပေါ်ထွက်လာ တတ်ချေသေးသည်။
(နဖူးစာ၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၁၉)

ဟူသော စကားအရ အချစ်ဦးနှင့်ပတ်သက်၍ မည်သည့်အခါမှ မမေ့ပျောက်နိုင်သည်ကို ‘ဆိုးဆိုး’၊ ‘ပုပ်ပုပ်’၊ ‘တန်တန်’ ဗျည်းတူ သရတူ အသံတူသည့် စကားလုံးများကို နှစ်ခါထပ်၍ နားဝင်ချိုအောင် ဖန်တီးရေးသားထားသဖြင့် နှစ်သက်ဖွယ်ကောင်းသည်။

ကာရန်သည် ဝဏ္ဏတစ်ခု၏ အဆုံးသံဖြစ်သည်။ (ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ဓနုဖြူ၊ ၂၀၁၁၊ ၄၈) ဗျည်းကွဲ သရတူအသံများကို တွဲစပ်ထားသည့်အတွက် စာဖတ်သူ၏အာရုံကို ဆွဲဆောင်နိုင်စွမ်းရှိသည်။ နဖူးစာ ပထမပိုင်း၌-

သာဓက - နေဝင်ရီတရော အချိန်၌ ငေးနေသော မောင်ဒေါင်း၊
လူငယ်ခေါင်းချချိန်၌ တွေ့ နေသော မောင်ဒေါင်း၊
လူကြီးခေါင်းချချိန်၌ ဝေနေသော မောင်ဒေါင်း၊
သန်းခေါင်ယံ၌ သူနီနေသော မောင်ဒေါင်း၊
ကြက်ဦးတွန်၌ မှုန်နေသော မောင်ဒေါင်း၊
အချိန်သာပြောင်းရမည်။ မောင်ဒေါင်းမှာ ဤအနေဖြင့်
အဆွေးပင်လယ် ဝေရလေသည်။ (နဖူးစာ၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၂၈)

ဟူသော ဝါကျမှ “ရော”၊ “သော”၊ “တွေ”၊ “ဝေ”၊ “သူနီ”၊ “မှုန်” ကာရန်တူလုံးချင်းကြိယာများကြောင့် ဇနီးလောင်းမချောနှင့် ခွဲခွာရ၍ မအိပ်နိုင်၊ မစားနိုင် အချိန်ပြည့်မှိုင်တွေငေးမောကာ အဆွေးပင်လယ် ဝေနေရသော ကိုဒေါင်း၏ သနားစဖွယ်ပုံရိပ်မှာ ပေါ်လွင်လာသည်ကို တွေ့ရသည်။

စကားပြောရာတွင် စကားသံများသည် အနိမ့်အမြင့်မရှိဘဲ တစ်ပြေးတည်း ထွက်လာသည် မဟုတ်ပါ။ စကားသံများ နိမ့်လိုက် မြင့်လိုက် အသံထွက်လိုက် ရပ်နားလိုက် ဖိလိုက် ဖော့လိုက်

စသည်ဖြင့် ပုံမှန် ပြောင်းလဲလှုပ်ရှားမှုများ ရှိမြဲဖြစ်သည်။ အသံအမြင့်အနိမ့် အချိအချ တစ်လှည့်စီ ပြောင်းကာ နရီစည်းဝါးကျကျပြောသော စကားမျိုးမှာ နာသူ၏ အာရုံကို ဆွဲဆောင်နိုင်စွမ်းရှိသည်။ မောင်ထင်၏ ကိုဒေါင်းဝတ္ထု၌ နရီစည်းဝါးတို့ကို တွေ့ရသည်။

စကားပြောရာ စာရေးရာတွင်လည်း ထိုသဘောနှင့်အညီ နရီစည်းဝါးကို လက္ခဏာတစ်ခု အဖြစ် တွေ့ရပါသည်။ ကိုဒေါင်း၏ ဝတ္ထုစကားပြေများတွင်လည်း နရီစည်းဝါးကျသော အရေးအဖွဲ့ ကောင်းများသည် အသံအတက်အကျများကြောင့် အသက်ဝင်လျက်ရှိပါသည်။

သာဓက - မိန်းမခိုးတော့ နံနက်စောစော မှုန်တိမှုန်မွှား ဝေလီဝေလင်း
ကလေးပေါ့ကွာ။ သူမှာသလိုလုပ်ရသကဲ့။ သူကအထုပ်အပိုး
ပိုက်ပြီး မယောင်မလည်နဲ့ကွင်းတန်းကစောင့်၊ ငါက ကျောင်း
စောစောကြီးတက်သလို ဘာလိုနဲ့ကွင်းတန်းဘက်ကို လှည့်
သွား၊ သူနဲ့တွေ့၊ နှစ်ယောက်သား သုသာန်ဘက်ကိုသုတ်ကြ
တာပေါ့...စကားစဉ်တို့ကား ကိုဒေါင်း၏ ပါးစပ်မှ လေးလေး
တွဲတွဲ ဖင့်ဖင့်နဲ့နဲ့ ဆိုင်းဆိုင်းတွဲတွဲ တစ်လုံးစီ တစ်ပါဒစီ
ထွက်၍လာသောစကားသံများပင်တည်း။ (နဖူးစာ၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၂၃)

စသည့် စကားလုံးတို့တွင် ‘တော့’၊ ‘နဲ့’၊ ‘စောင့်’၊ ‘လှည့်’၊ ‘တွေ့’၊ ‘ပေါ့’ စသည့် သံလတ်သံ၊ ‘စောစော’၊ ‘သလို’၊ ‘မယောင်မလည်’ စသည့် သံပြေ၊ ‘လေးလေးတွဲတွဲ’၊ ‘ဖင့်ဖင့်နဲ့နဲ့’၊ ‘ဆိုင်းဆိုင်းတွဲတွဲ’၊ ‘၍’ စသည့် သံလေးသံ၊ ‘သော’ သံလွင်သံတို့ဖြင့် အသံအတက်အကျအဖွဲ့တို့မှ ‘လာ’၊ ‘သော’၊ ‘များ’ သံပြေတို့၌ ရေးသားပုံတို့ကြောင့် ကိုဒေါင်းမိန်းမခိုးသည့်အကြောင်း ပြောပြနေသဖြင့် ကိုဒေါင်း၏ အသံကို ကြားယောင်လာစေပါသည်။

“စကားပြောရာ စာရေးရာတွင် သက်ရှိသက်မဲ့တို့၏မြည်သံများကို ဘာသာစကားဖြင့် ပုံဖော် လေ့ရှိကြပါသည်။ နေ့စဉ်ပြောဆိုသောစကားများမှသည် စာပေအရေးအဖွဲ့များအထိ ထိုစကားများ ကို တွင်တွင်ကျယ်ကျယ် အသုံးပြုလာကြပါသည်” (ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ဓနုဖြူ၊ ၂၀၁၁၊ ၅၇)

မောင်ထင်၏ ကိုဒေါင်းဝတ္ထုများတွင်လည်း အခြေအနေများ၊ အဖြစ်အပျက်များ၊ အကြောင်းအရာ များ မြင်ယောင်၊ ကြားယောင်လာအောင် သဘာဝအသံအတိုင်း မြည်သံစကားလုံးများကို ထည့်သွင်း ရေးထားကြောင်း တွေ့ရပါသည်။

သာဓက - ထိုအခါ တဒေါက်ဒေါက်နှင့် သံဖြူပြားတစ်ခုကို ခတ်နေ
သော သံဖြူဆရာက အမှတ်မဲ့ မော်၍ကြည့်လိုက်သည်။
(နဖူးစာ၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၂၁)

စသည့် ပြောစကားများတွင် မြည်သံစကားလုံးများ အသုံးပြုကာ အသက်ဝင်အောင် သရုပ်ဖော် ရေးသားထားသည်မှာ နှစ်သက်ဖွယ်ကောင်းပါသည်။

စကားပြောရာ၊ စာရေးရာတွင် အာမေဓိုတ်များပါလာပါက အသံ၏အာနိသင်ကြောင့် ပြောသူ နှင့် အပြောခံရသူတို့၏ ခံစားမှုများ အသက်ဝင်လာသည်ကို တွေ့ရပါသည်။

သာဓက - ဪ... ကိုရွှေဖိုးရဲ့။ (နဖူးစာ၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၃၃)

- အလိုလေး ကိုယ့်လူက ကျကျနန အိမ်ထောင်ပြုခဲ့ဖူးသေးသကဲ့။
(ကိုဒေါင်း၏စစ်ပွဲ၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၁၁၄)
- ဟာ...ဟာ...ကိုယ့်လူက မိန်းမယူဖူးသေးသကဲ့။(ကိုဒေါင်း၏ စစ်ပွဲ၊
၂၀၁၈၊ ၁၁၄)

ဤသို့ဖြင့် အသံအလှနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်ရာတွင် ဗျည်းတူ၊ သရတူ စကားလုံးများ တွဲသုံး၍ သော်လည်းကောင်း၊ ဗျည်းကွဲ၊ သရတူ စကားလုံးများကို ကာရန်ချိတ် ရေးသား၍သော်လည်းကောင်း၊ သဘာဝအသံအတိုင်း မြည်သံများကို ထည့်သွင်းရေးသား၍သော်လည်းကောင်း၊ စိတ်ခံစားမှုများကို ပြရာတွင် အာမေဍိတ်စကားလုံးများဖြင့် အသံအလှဆင်ကာ အနက်ကိုပေါ်လွင်အောင် ရေးသားထား ရာ စာရေးဆရာ မောင်ထင်၏ ထူးခြားသော ရေးဟန်ကို တွေ့ရသည်။

၂။ ၃။ စကားအသုံးအနှုန်းအလှနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှု

လူတို့၏အသုံးအဆောင်ဖြစ်သည့် ဘာသာစကားကို အသုံးပြုရာ၌ စကားအသုံးများနှင့်အလှဆင်လေ့ ရှိသည်။ ထိုသို့ အလှဆင်ရာတွင် စာရေးသူ ဆိုလိုချင်သည့်အနက်အဓိပ္ပာယ်များ၊ ခံစားမှုများ ပေါ်လွင် ထင်ရှားလာစေရန် စကားလုံးများကို စကားလုံးအလှနှင့် သုံးစွဲထားသည်ကို တွေ့ရသည်။

အနက်ရိုးဆိုသည်မှာ ရည်ညွှန်းသော အညွှန်းခံများက သဘောလက္ခဏာများကို အဘိဓာန် အနက်ဖွင့်ပုံမျိုးဖြင့် ဖွင့်ဆိုသောအနက်ဖြစ်သည်။ (ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ဇန်နဝါရီ၊ ၇၆)

သာဓက - အချစ်တော် (နဖူးစာ၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၂၁)

ဟူသောစကားလုံး၏ အနက်ကို အဘိဓာန်၌ ‘သူတစ်ပါးထက် ပို၍ ချစ်ခင်နှစ်သက်ခြင်း ခံရသူ’ ဟူ၍ ဖွင့်ဆိုထားသည်။

အထက်ပါ ပညတ်နက်သည် အညွှန်းခံ၏ အမည်ကို ခေါ်ဝေါ်ခြင်းဖြစ်သည်။

ဂုဏ်ရည်ပြအနက်ဆိုသည်မှာအညွှန်းခံ၏ဂုဏ်ရည်များကိုဖော်ပြသည့်အနက်ဖြစ်၍ ဂုဏ်ရည် ပြ အနက်ဟုခေါ်သည်။ (ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ဇန်နဝါရီ၊ ၇၇)

သာဓက - သပိတ်ရောင်ထ (ဟာမက်ရှား၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၇၃)

ဟူသောစကားလုံးကို ဟာမက်ရှားဝတ္ထုတို၌ ကိုဒေါင်း၏ မည်းမှောင်နေသည့် ထိပ်ပြောင်ပြောင် ကို မြင်ယောင် လာအောင် ဆိုလိုခြင်းဖြစ်သည်။

ခံစားမှုပြအနက်ဆိုသည်မှာ စကားလုံးတွင် ထင်ဟပ်နေသော ခံစားမှုကို ခံစားမှုပြအနက်ဟု ဆိုလိုခြင်းဖြစ်သည်။ (ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ဇန်နဝါရီ၊ ၈၁)

သာဓက - ‘ဟေ့ မောင်ချစ်၊ အဘိုးကြီးတော့ သိုးနေပြီထင်တယ်ကွ’
(ဟာမက်ရှား၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၇၂)

ဟူသောစကားအရ ‘အဘိုးကြီးတော့ သိုးနေပြီထင်တယ်’ ဟူသောစကားသည် မလေးစား သည့် သဘောအဖြစ်တွေ့ ရပြီး ပြောသူတို့၏ခံစားချက်အတိုင်းပွင့်ထွက်လာသောစကားလုံးဖြစ်သည်။ စာရေးသူ မောင်ထင်၏ဆိုလိုချက်ကို ပေါ်လွင်စေသည်။

ဒွန်တွဲအနက်ဆိုသည်မှာ စကားလုံးများကို တွဲဆက်၍ သုံးခြင်းဖြင့် ရရှိလာသော အနက် ဖြစ်သည်။ (ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ဓနုဖြူ၊ ၈၈)

သာဓက - စုံးစုံးမြုပ် (ထားဝယ်လုံချည်၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၅၈)

ထိုသာဓကတွင် ကြိယာအထူးပြုနှင့် ကြိယာတွဲသုံးသောပုဒ်များကို ဒွန်တွဲ၍ စာရေးသူ၏ ဆိုလိုချင်သည့် အကြောင်းအရာကို ပေါ်လွင်အောင် ရေးနိုင်သည်ကို နှစ်သက်ဖွယ်တွေ့ရသည်။

နှစ်ဖက်သွားအနက်ဆိုသည်မှာ အနက်ရိုးတစ်ခုထက်ပိုသော စကားလုံးများတွင် အနက် တစ်ခုဖြင့် အသုံးပြုစဉ် အခြားအနက်တစ်ခုပါ ပေါ်ထွက်လာလျှင် ထိုအနက်ကိုနှစ်ဖက်သွားအနက် ဟု ခေါ်သည်။ (ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ဓနုဖြူ၊ ၉၀)

သာဓက - ခေါင်းချင်းရိုက် (နဖူးစာ၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၂၅)

ဟူသောစကားတွင် ‘ခေါင်းချင်းရိုက်’ သည် ဆွေးနွေးတိုင်ပင်သည်ဟု အနက်ရသကဲ့သို့ ဦးခေါင်း အချင်းချင်း ထိရိုက်သည်ဟု အနက်ရပြန်သည်။ ထိုသို့သော နှစ်ဖက်သွားအနက်ဖြင့် သုံးနှုန်းထားရာ စာရေးသူ၏ရေးဟန်မှာ ဆိုလိုချင်သည့် သဘောပေါ်သကဲ့သို့ နှစ်သက်မှုကိုဖြစ်စေသည်။

အလေးပေးအနက်ဆိုသည်မှာ စကားပြောရာ စာရေးရာတွင် အလေးထားလိုသည့် အချက်ကို ပေါ်လွင်အောင် စီစဉ်ရေးသားခြင်းကို အလေးပေးအနက်ဟုခေါ်သည်။ (ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ဓနုဖြူ၊ ၉၂)

သာဓက - မဏ္ဍပ်ချောင်မှာ မဏ္ဍပ်ကြီးတစ်ခုကိုအစွဲပြု၍ ခေါ်သည်။

(မဏ္ဍပ်ချောင်၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၄၄)

ဟူသော ဝါကျတွင် မဏ္ဍပ်ချောင်ဟု ခေါ်ရသည့်အကြောင်းမှာ မသိသေးသော အကြောင်းအရာ ဖြစ်သည့်အတွက် သိပြီးသားဖြစ်သောမဏ္ဍပ်ကြီးကို နောက်ခံပြုပြီးခေါ်ရခြင်းအကြောင်းအရာအသစ် အဖြစ် အလေးပေးဖော်ပြခြင်းဖြစ်သည်။

ဂယက်အနက်သည် ရှေ့တွင်ဖော်ပြခဲ့သော ဂုဏ်ရည်ပြအနက်၊ ခံစားမှုပြအနက်၊ ဒွန်တွဲအနက်၊ နှစ်ဖက်သွားအနက်တို့ကို ဂယက်အနက်ဟုခြုံငုံသတ်မှတ်နိုင်ပြီး အနက်ရိုးကိုအကြောင်းပြု၍ ဂယက် ရိုက်လာသော သဘောဖြစ်သည့်အတွက် ဂယက်အနက်ဟုခေါ်ပါသည်။ (ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ဓနုဖြူ၊ ၉၅)

ဘာသာဗေဒဆိုင်ရာ အနက်အဓိပ္ပာယ်ဆိုသည်မှာ ပြောသူ၏ အနက်အဓိပ္ပာယ်နှင့် နာသူ၏ အနက်အဓိပ္ပာယ်ဟူသော ဘက်နှစ်ဘက်၏ကြားတွင် ပုံမှန်ကြားနေအနေအထားဖြင့် တည်ရှိခြင်း ဖြစ်သည်။ (ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ဓနုဖြူ၊ ၉၇)

ထိုသဘောကို ဆရာမောင်ထင်၏ ကိုဒေါင်းဝတ္ထုတိုများတွင် စာရေးသူက ဆရာကြီး၏အဆို နှင့်အညီ ဖွင့်ဆိုချက်နှင့်အညီ ရေးနိုင်သည်ကိုတွေ့ရသဖြင့် နှစ်သက်ဖွယ်ရေးဟန်ကို တွေ့ရသည်။

သာဓက - လောကတည်းဟူသော မဟာသမုဒ္ဒရာကြီးကို လက်ပစ်ကွန်မျှ မရှိသော ဉာဏ်ကွန်ရက်ငယ်ဖြင့် ဖြန့်၍ အုပ်ကြ၏။ (နဖူးစာ၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၂၀)

ဟူသော ဝါကျတွင် စာရေးသူနှင့် ကိုဒေါင်းတို့နှစ်ဦးသား သမ္မန်စီးရင်း အတွေးကိုယ်စီနှင့် ရှိနေကြ သည်ကို ‘လောကတည်းဟူသော မဟာသမုဒ္ဒရာကြီးကို လက်ပစ်ကွန်မျှမရှိသော ဉာဏ်ကွန်ရက်ငယ် ဖြင့် ဖြန့်၍အုပ်ကြ၏’ ဟု ရေးသားထားရာ ‘ဉာဏ်ကွန်ရက်’ ဟူသော စကားသုံးအလှကြောင့် စာဖတ် သူအား နှစ်သက်မှုကို ဖြစ်စေသည်။ အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှုကြောင့် ပို၍ပိုပေါ်လာပါသည်။

၂။ ၄။ အလင်္ကာအဆင်တန်ဆာအလှနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှု

ဘာသာစကားကိုအသုံးပြုရာတွင် အလှဖန်တီးမှုပြု၍သုံးကြသည်။ အလင်္ကာနှင့်အလှဆင်၍ အသုံးပြုကြသည်။ အလင်္ကာဟူသော အဆင်တန်ဆာ၏ အရေးပါမှုကို စာပေရေးရာ အလင်္ကာကျမ်းပြုစုသူ ဆရာကြီး ဦးသော်ဇင်က အောက်ပါအတိုင်း ဖော်ပြပါသည်-

တောင်းမှာအကွပ်၊ လူမှာအဝတ်ဟု ဆိုရိုးစကားရှိ၏။ တောင်းကို အကွပ်
မကွပ်ဘဲထားလေက နှီးစထိုးထိုးထောင်ထောင်တို့ဖြင့် ကြည့်၍ မလှချေ။
အကွပ်ကွပ်ပေးမှ သေသပ်ကြည့်ရှုလှပ၏။ ထို့အတူလူလည်း လိုက်လျော
ပြေပြစ်သော အဝတ်တန်ဆာ ဆင်ယင်ဝတ်ဆင်ပေးမှ သပ်သပ်ရပ်ရပ်
လှလှပပဖြစ်သည်။ ထို့အတူစာပေကိုလည်း သဒ္ဒါအနက်တို့ဖြင့်စနစ်တကျ
တန်ဆာဆင်လေမှ နှစ်သက်စရာ ကောင်းသည်။ သို့မဟုတ်ပါက အပြစ်
ဒေါသ အစအနတို့ဖြင့် ကြည့်၍ မကောင်းချေ။ (သော်ဇင်၊ ဦး၊ ၁၉၆၆)

ဟုဖော်ပြထားပါသည်။ အလင်္ကာသုံးခြင်းသည် လှပအောင်အပေါ်ယံတန်ဆာဆင်ပေးခြင်း သက်သက်
မဟုတ်ဘဲ ဆိုလိုချက် ထင်ပေါ်အောင် နှစ်သက်ဖွယ်ဖြစ်အောင် သုံးခြင်းဖြစ်သည်။ ထိုအသုံးများကို
မောင်ထင်၏ ကိုဒေါင်းဝတ္ထု၌ တွေ့ရသည်။

နဖူးစာပထမပိုင်း၌ ကိုဒေါင်းသည် သတ္တဝါမှန်သမျှ အချစ်နှင့်မကင်းနိုင်၊ အချစ်သံသရာလည်
နေပုံနှင့် အလွမ်းကို ထပ်ဆင့်အောင် ပံ့ပိုးပေးနေသည်ကို-

သာဓက - အချစ်ရွက်ကိုဖွင့် ပဲ့ဖြင့်မမတ်သောအချစ်လှေကိုလွှင့်ကာ
အချစ် ပင်လယ်ကြောဝယ် ပေါလောမျော နေကြသော
အချစ် မောင်နှံ။ (နဖူးစာ၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၃၇)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း ‘အချစ်ရွက်’၊ ‘အချစ်လှေ’၊ ‘အချစ်ပင်လယ်’၊ ‘အချစ်မောင်နှံ’၊ ‘မျက်နှာပန်း’ ဟူ၍
မမြင်ရသောအနှိုင်းကို မြင်ရသောအနှိုင်းခံတို့ဖြင့် ရူပကအလင်္ကာမြောက်စွာ ရေးထားသဖြင့် ရုပ်လုံး
ကြွစေသည်။ ဆိုလိုသည့်အနက်ပေါ်အောင် အလှဆင်ထားသည်ကို တွေ့ရသည်။

ထို့အတူ မဟုတ်လျှင်မခံတတ်၊ မတော်သည်ကိုမြင်လျှင်မနေတတ်သော ကိုဒေါင်းတစ်ယောက်
သူတစ်ပါးလင်မယားကြားဝင်ပါမိသဖြင့် အတိဒုက္ခရောက်ပုံ၊ ရိုးသားသည့်ကိုဒေါင်း၏စရိုက်ကိုဖော်ပြ
ရာတွင်-

သာဓက - ကိုဒေါင်း၏ ရုပ်နှင့်နာမ်တို့မှာ အကြင်လင်မယားအဖြစ်မှ
ယာယီပြတ်စဲသွားလေသည်။ (ထားဝယ်လုံချည်၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၅၇)

ဟူ၍ ဝင်္ကုသုတ္တိအလင်္ကာမြောက်သော အရေးအဖွဲ့ဖြင့်လည်းကောင်း၊ ရဲစခန်းအတွင်း လူအုပ်များ
အကြား ကိုဒေါင်း နစ်မြုပ်နေရသည့်အဖြစ်ကို ဖော်ပြရာတွင်-

သာဓက - ကြီးမားသောလူစုလူဝေးတည်းဟူသော အဏ္ဏဝါပြင်ကျယ်
တွင် ကိုဒေါင်းသည် စုံးစုံးမြုပ်၍ နစ်နေသည်။ (ထားဝယ်
လုံချည်၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၅၈)

ဟူ၍ အတိဿယဝုတ္တိအလင်္ကာမြောက်အောင် ရေးသားထားသည်။

ထို့အပြင်မြည်သံစွဲအလင်္ကာများဖြင့် စာဖတ်သူ၏စိတ်နား၌ကြားယောင်လာအောင် ရေးသား ရာတွင်-

သာဓက - မိုးပေါက်သည် တစ်ခါတစ်ခါ ကြီးမားလာပြီးလျှင် ခနိမိုး
ခနိကာအိမ်များကို တဖြန်းဖြန်းနှင့် ရိုက်၏။
(ထားဝယ်လုံချည်၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၅၂)

ဟူ၍ ‘တဖြန်းဖြန်း’၊ ‘ဖြောင်းဖြောင်း’ ဟူသော ‘ဖ’ အက္ခရာများဖြင့် သဘာဝအသံအတိုင်း မြည်သံစွဲ အလင်္ကာမြောက်အောင် အလင်္ကာအဆင်တန်ဆာပြုထားသည်မှာ နှစ်သက်ဖွယ်ကောင်းသည်။

ထို့ကြောင့် ဘာသာစကားကို လှပလာအောင် အလင်္ကာများဖြင့် အဆင်တန်ဆာပြု၍ ပြောလေ့ ရေးလေ့ရှိသည်။ အလင်္ကာဖြင့် ရေးဖွဲ့ခြင်းသည် ဘာသာစကားကို လှပအောင် အလှဆင် ရေးဖွဲ့ခြင်း ဖြစ်သည်။ ထို့အတူပင် ဘာသာစကားကို လှပအောင် အလှဆင်ရေးဖွဲ့ထားသည်ကို စာရေးသူ မောင်ထင်၏ ကိုဒေါင်းဝတ္ထုတွင် အများဆုံးတွေ့ရသည်။

၂။ ၅။ ဝါကျအလှနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှု

“ဘာသာစကားတစ်ခုကို တတ်မြောက်သည်ဆိုရာ၌ ဝါကျဖွဲ့နိုင်စွမ်းရှိသည့် အဆင့်သို့ရောက်မှ တတ် မြောက်သည်ဟု ဆိုနိုင်ပါသည်။ မြန်မာဝါကျဖွဲ့ထုံးကျမ်းကို ပြုစုသော ဆရာကြီး ဦးဖေမောင်တင်က ဤသို့မိန့်ဆိုဖူးပါသည်။ လူတစ်ဦးတစ်ယောက်သည် မိမိ၏ စိတ်ကူးစိတ်သန်းများကို သူတစ်ပါးအား ကြားသိစေလို၍ ဘာသာစကားဖြင့် ပြောဆိုရေးသား၍ ကြားသိစေနိုင်သည်။ ဘာသာစကား၏ ရင်းမြစ်သည် ဝါကျဖြစ်ရကား ‘ဘာသာစကားအစ ဝါကျက’ ဟု ဆိုသင့်ပေသည်။” (ဖေမောင်တင်၊ ဦး၊ ၁၉၆၁)

ထို့ကြောင့် စာရေးသူက ဆရာမောင်ထင် လုပ်ထားသော ဝါကျအလှများကို တွေ့ရပါသည်။ အဘယ်ကြောင့်ဆိုသော် လျှပ်တပြက်အဖြစ်အပျက်များကို ဝါကျတိုလေးများဖြင့် ဝါကျအလှ ပေါ်လွင် အောင်၊ မြင်သာလာအောင် ရေးသားထားသည်မှာ ဆိုလိုချက်ကို ရှင်းလင်းလွယ်ကူစေသည်။

ထားဝယ်လုံချည်ဝတ္ထုတို၌ မြင်းပန်းထိမ်ဇနီးမောင်နှံ ရန်ဖြစ်ချိန်သည် မိုးထစ်ချုန်းရွာနေချိန် ဖြစ်ကြောင်းကို-

သာဓက - ထိုအတွင်း လျှပ်သည်ပြက်၏။
တောင်အရပ်ဆီမှ မိုးသည် ချုန်း၏။ (ထားဝယ်လုံချည်၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၅၅)

ဟူ၍လည်းကောင်း၊ မြင်းပန်းထိမ်ယောက်ျားက ဇနီးသည်အား မတရားအနိုင်ကျင့် ရိုက်နှက်သည်ကို မြင်ရသည့်အခါ မဟုတ်လျှင် မခံတတ်၊ မတော်သည်ကိုတွေ့လျှင် မနေတတ်သော ကိုဒေါင်းသည် မြင်းပန်းထိမ်ယောက်ျားအား လေးခွင့်ပစ်၍ ခြောက်လှန့်သည်။ ထိုအခါ မယားလုပ်သူ မြင်းပန်းထိမ် မိန်းမက ကိုဒေါင်းအားရဲစခန်းသို့ဆွဲခေါ်၍တိုင်ရာ ကိုဒေါင်းအံ့ဩလွန်း၍ စိတ်နှင့်မကပ်၊ သတိလွတ်ရ ပုံကို-

သာဓက - ရဲစခန်းသို့ရောက်၏။ ရဲများဝိုင်းလာ၏။ (ထားဝယ်လုံချည်၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၅၇)

- မိမိလည်း ပြန်ပြောလိုက်၏။ ဘာပြောလိုက်သည်မသိ။ (ထားဝယ်လုံချည်၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၅၈)

ဟူသော ပြောစကားများကို ဝါကျတိုကလေးများဖြင့် အဖြစ်အပျက်များကို ပေါ့ပေါ့ပါးပါး သွက်သွက် လက်လက် ဖော်ပြရေးသားထားသည်မှာ စာဟန်သွက်လာသကဲ့သို့ ကိုဒေါင်း ရိုးအပုံပေါ်လာသည်မှာ နှစ်သက်ဖွယ် ကောင်းလှသည်။ ဆရာကြီး ဦးဖေမောင်တင် ဆောင်ပုဒ်နှင့်ညီအောင် အကြောင်းအရာ နှင့်လိုက်ဖက်အောင် ရိုးရှင်းသောဝါကျဖြင့် ရေးပြနိုင်စွမ်းရှိသည်ကို တွေ့ရသည်။

ဝါကျရောများသုံးခြင်းကြောင့် ဆိုလိုချက်များ ပိုပေါ်လာသည်။ ဝါကျရိုးများကို စကားဆက် များဖြင့် ဆက်လိုက်လျှင် ဝါကျရောဖြစ်လာသည်။ ဝါကျရောတွင် ဝါကျရိုး အနည်းဆုံး နှစ်ခုဆက်ထား သည်။ ဝါကျရောထဲက ဝါကျရိုးများသည် သီးခြားမဟုတ်တော့ဘဲ ဝါကျရော၏ အစိတ်အပိုင်းများ ဖြစ်သွားသည်။ ဝါကျကဏ္ဍကို အမှီဝါကျကဏ္ဍနှင့် အမှီဝါကျကဏ္ဍဟူ၍ နှစ်မျိုးခွဲသည်။ အမှီဝါကျ ကဏ္ဍက အဓိပ္ပာယ်ပြည့်စုံပြီး မိမိဘာသာ ရပ်တည်နိုင်သည်။ အမှီဝါကျကဏ္ဍက အဓိပ္ပာယ်မပြည့်စုံ၊ မိမိဘာသာ မရပ်တည်နိုင်။ အမှီဝါကျကဏ္ဍကို အမှီပြုရသည်။ (ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ ဓနုဖြူ၊ ၂၀၁၁၊ ၁၂၀)

ဝါကျရော၏သဘောကို ကိုဒေါင်း သောင်လိမ်သူလေးနှင့် ချိန်းတွေ့ရာ မောင်ချစ်က အစောင့် အဖြစ် လိုက်ပါကူညီသည့်အကြောင်းကို ရေးသားရာတွင်-

- သာကေ - ကိုဒေါင်းသည် အိမ်ကလေးကိုပတ်ပြီးလျှင် နောက်ဖေးဘက်သို့ လျှောက်သွား၏။ ကိုချစ်လည်း ရေသောက်ပြီးသော် သရက်ပင် ကြီး အောက်သို့ဝင်ကာ မီးဖိုကလေးနား ထိုင်၍ မီးစ၍လှူ၏။
(ဟာမက်ရှား၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၇၃)

ဟူ၍ လူငယ်တို့သဘာဝ ချစ်သူနှင့်တွေ့စဉ် ပြောစရာစကားမကုန်၊ ပြောမဝဖြစ်ရသကဲ့သို့ မြန်မာ့ ကျေးရွာခလေးထုံးစံ မိန်းမလည်သွားက အဖော်အဖြစ် လိုက်ပါကူညီတတ်သော ချစ်စရာခလေးတို့ကို ဝါကျအလှများသုံး၍ အနက်ဖော်ပြထားသည်မှာ ကြည်နူးနှစ်သက်ဖွယ်ကောင်းသည်။

ဝါကျရှည်တွင် နာမဝိသေသနများကို ထပ်ခါထပ်ခါဖွဲ့ထားသဖြင့် မိမိပြောချင်သည့်အနက်မှာ ထင်ရှားလာပါသည်။

- သာကေ - အချစ်ဖြင့် ပြည့်လျှမ်းသောမျက်နှာပန်းနှစ်ခုမှာထင်လင်းသော နေရောင်ခြည်ဖြင့်ပွင့်ပွင့်လင်းလင်းမပွင့်ရသောကြောင့် အေးမြ ကြည်လင်သော ကြယ်ရောင်လရောင်တို့ဖြင့်သာ တင်းတိမ် ရပြီးလျှင် အုံ့ပုံးပွင့်ကြရဟန် တူပါသည်။ (နဖူးစာ၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၃၆)

ဟူသော ဝါကျသည် နဖူးစာ၊ ဒုတိယပိုင်းမှဖြစ်သည်။ “--- သော ---” ဟု ပုံစံနှင့် နာမဝိသေသန များနှင့် ရေးဖွဲ့ထားသည်မှာ ကိုဒေါင်းနှင့် မချောတို့၏ ညဉ့်သန်းခေါင်ယံအချိန်၌ တွေ့ဆုံကြရပုံကို အထင်အရှား ဖော်ကျူးနေသကဲ့သို့ ကိုဒေါင်း၏ စစ်ပွဲဝတ္ထုတို့၌ ကိုဒေါင်းသည် ချစ်စ၊ ခင်စ၊ ကြင်နာစ အိမ်ထောင်ကျခါစ၌ အိမ်အလုပ်ဟူသမျှ ကိုဒေါင်းသည်သာ ခိုင်ခံ့လုပ်ကြောင်းကို-

- သာကေ - ချစ်စခင်စဘဝတွင် ကိုဒေါင်းကမုန့်ကြိတ်၊ ကိုဒေါင်းက မုန့်ညှစ်၊ ကိုဒေါင်းက မုန့်ဟင်းခါးဟင်းရည် ချက်၊ ကိုဒေါင်းက မုန့်ဟင်းခါး

တောင်းကြီးကို ရှာတစ်ဆိုင်၊ နောက်တစ်ဆိုင်၊ ထမ်းပြီး ဈေးသို့
အရောက်ပို့ပေးကာမှ ကိုဒေါင်းမိန်းမကနှုတ်သီးကောင်း လျှာပါး
ဈေးသည်အဖြစ်နှင့် မုန့်ဟင်းခါးရောင်းသည်။ (ကိုဒေါင်း၏စစ်ပွဲ
၂၀၁၈၊ ၁၁၅)

ဟူ၍ ‘နာမ်+ကြိယာ+နာမ်+ကြိယာ’ ပုံစံနှင့်ရေးဖွဲ့ထားသည်မှာ ကိုဒေါင်း အိမ်ထောင်တာဝန်ကျေပွန်ရုံ
သာမက အိမ်ထောင်ဦးစီးပီသပုံ ပေါ်လွင်လှသည်။ ဝါကျအလှနှင့် ဝါကျရှည် သုံးထားသော်လည်း
စာဖတ်သူမှာ အကြောင်းအရာမရှုပ်ထွေးစေဘဲ ရှင်းလင်း၍ နှစ်သက်ဖွယ်ကောင်း လှသည်။

ဆန့်ကျင်ဘက်အနက်နှစ်ခုကိုယှဉ်တွဲ၍အသုံးထွက်ထားသည်ကိုလည်းတွေ့ရသကဲ့သို့ စာရေးသူ
မောင်ထင်၏ ဂုဏ်ဖော်သလိုလိုနှင့် ထေ့သံငေါ့သံများ၊ သရော်သံများပါအောင် ရေးဖွဲ့နိုင်စွမ်းရှိသည်
ကိုလည်း နှစ်သက်ဖွယ်တွေ့ရသည်။

သာကေ - နေ့ကျွတ်စီညကျွတ်စီ လင်မယားရန်ဖြစ်တမ်းအချစ်စမ်းကြသော
အမူအကျင့်ကြောင့် မြင်းပန်းထိမ်ဟုဆိုလျှင် နှစ်ပတ်အောင် မလုပ်
တတ်သေးသောငွေ့ကအစ သိသည်။ (ထားဝယ်လုံချည်၊ ၂၀၁၈၊
၅၂)

သာကေ - လက်တစ်ဖက်ကား လောက်လေး၊ ခါးပိုက်ထောင်တွင် လောက်
စာလုံးအပြည့်နှင့် ကိုယ်ရောင်ကိုယ်ဝါ မည်းမှောင်စွာ ထွက်ပေါ်
လာသည်ကား သိကြားမင်းထင့်။ (ထားဝယ်လုံချည်၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၅၆)

ထို့အတူ အမေးအဖြေဝါကျပုံစံလေးများဖြင့် စာဖတ်သူအား ဆက်လက်ဖတ်ချင်ဖွယ်
ရေးသား ထားသည်ကိုလည်းတွေ့ရသည်။

သာကေ - လောက၏သဘောကို မည်သူမျှ မပေါက်မိကြ။ လောက၏ အလိုကို
ဆွဲငင်ရာကိုသာလျှင် လိုက်ပါကြရပါသည်။ အဘယ်သို့ ဆွဲငင်ပါ
သနည်း။ အလွမ်းဖက်သို့ဟုဝန်ခံပါသည်။ (နဖူးစာ၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၂၀)

ပုံစံတူဝါကျကလေးများဖြင့် စာဖတ်သူအား ဆက်လက်ဆွဲဆောင်ထားသည်ကိုလည်း နဖူးစာ၊
ပထမပိုင်း၌-

သာကေ - အစဉ်သဖြင့် ရွှင်ပျံ့ခဲ့သော မျက်နှာမှာ ညှိုးငယ်နွမ်းရိရချေပြီ။
အစဉ်သဖြင့် ကြည်လင်ခဲ့သော မျက်လုံးတို့မှာ အရောင်အဆင်း
ကင်းမဲ့ရချေပြီ။ အစဉ်သဖြင့် ဖျတ်လတ်ပေါ့ပါးခဲ့သောခြေလက်
တို့မှာ လေးကန်ဖင့်နွဲ့ရချေပြီ။ (နဖူးစာ၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၂၈)

ဟူ၍ရေးသားထားပါသည်။

ကိုဒေါင်း စစ်ကိုမုန်းကြောင်း၊ ရွံရှာကြောင်း၊ စစ်ကြောင့် ဖြစ်ပေါ်လာသော မတရားမှု အဓမ္မမှု
တို့ကို နှလုံးနာရကြောင်းကို-

သာကေ - ကိုဒေါင်းသည် ပြီးခဲ့သော ကမ္ဘာစစ်ကြီးကို ရွံရှာသည်။ မုန်းတီး
သည်။ အမြင်ကတ်သည်။ (ကိုဒေါင်း၏စစ်ပွဲ၊ ၂၀၁၈၊ ၁၁၀)

ဟူ၍ အဓိပ္ပာယ်တူ ဝါကျတိုကလေးများကို ဆင့်၍ သဒ္ဒါအလှဆင် ရေးသားထားသဖြင့် ကိုဒေါင်း၏ စစ်အပေါ် နာကျည်းမုန်းတီးမှု ခံစားချက်ကို ပေါ်လွင်စေပါသည်။ ထို့ကြောင့် မောင်ထင်၏ လေသံကို ပေါ်လွင်စေပါသည်။ ထို့အပြင် ဝါကျတို၊ ဝါကျရှည် ပုံစံတူဝါကျကလေးများကို ရှင်းရှင်းလင်းလင်းဖြင့် စာဖတ်သူသိမြင်အောင် ရေးသားထားရာ စာရေးသူ၏ လေသံပေါ်သကဲ့သို့ နှစ်သက်ဖွယ်ကောင်း ပါသည်။

ခြုံငုံသုံးသပ်ချက်

အသံအလှနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှုပြုရာတွင် အသံတူ စကားလုံးချင်း နီးနီးကပ်ကပ် တွဲစပ်၍ လည်းကောင်း၊ မြည်သံစွဲစကားလုံးများဖြင့် အသံအလှဆင်၍လည်းကောင်း စာဖတ်သူအား နှစ်သက်မှု ဖြစ်စေသည်။ စကားအသုံးအနှုန်းအလှနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှုတွင် လုံးချင်းကြိယာတို့နှင့် အလှဆင် ရေး၍ စာဖတ်သူအား နှစ်သက်မှုဖြစ်စေသည်။ အလင်္ကာအဆင်တန်ဆာနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှုတွင် စကားပြောရာ၌လည်းကောင်း၊ စာရေးရာ၌လည်းကောင်း ဆိုလိုချက်ပေါ်လွင်စေသဖြင့် နှစ်သက်မှု ဖြစ်စေသည်။ ဝါကျအလှနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှုတွင် ပုံစံတူဝါကျတိုလေးများဖြင့် လှုပ်ရှားမှုများ၊ ခံစားချက်များ ဖော်ပြထားသဖြင့် စာဖတ်သူကို နှစ်သက်မှုကို ဖြစ်စေသည်။ အမေးအဖြေဝါကျပုံစံ လေးများကြောင့် ဇာတ်ဆောင်တို့၏ ခံစားချက်ကို ပေါ်လွင်စေ၊ နှစ်သက်မှုဖြစ်စေသည်။ စာရေးသူ မောင်ထင်ဟု လူသိများရခြင်းမှာ လူ့သဘော၊ လူ့သဘာဝကို သရော်ဟန်သရုပ်ဖော် ရေးသားထားခြင်း ကြောင့်ဖြစ်သည်။ ထိုသို့ သရုပ်ဖော်ပုံများ၊ သရော်ဟန်များကို ပေါ်လွင်အောင် ပုံပိုပေးသည့်အရာမှာ ဆရာ၏ ဘာသာစကားအသုံးနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှု အားကောင်းသောကြောင့်ဖြစ်သည်။

နိဂုံး

ဘာသာစကားကိုလှပစေရန် နေ့စဉ်ပြောစကားများကို အသံအလှဖြင့်လည်းကောင်း၊ စကားလုံးအလှ ဖြင့်လည်းကောင်း၊ အလင်္ကာတန်ဆာအလှတို့ဖြင့်လည်းကောင်း၊ ဝါကျအလှဖြင့်လည်းကောင်း အလှ ဆင် ရေးဖွဲ့လေ့ရှိသည်။ မောင်ထင်၏ကိုဒေါင်းဝတ္ထုတွင် စာရေးသူနှင့်ကိုဒေါင်းတို့ ရင်းနှီးချစ်ခင်ပုံ၊ ကိုဒေါင်းလူရည်မလည်ခင်ခွကျကျဖြစ်ရပုံ၊ မဟုတ်လျှင်မခံတတ်သည့် ကိုဒေါင်း၏စရိုက်နှင့်ကိုဒေါင်း အလွမ်းအဆွေးကြွယ်ပုံတို့မှ စာရေးသူ၏ ဘာသာစကားအသုံး ပိုင်နိုင်သည့်အတွက် လိုသလိုအသုံးပြု သွားသည်ကို မှတ်သားဖွယ်တွေ့ရသည်။ အနက်အဓိပ္ပာယ်လည်း ပိုမိုထင်ရှားပေါ်လွင်လာပါသည်။

အလှဖန်တီးမှုအသုံးနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှုသည် လူ့သဘော၊ လူ့သဘာဝ၊ လူ့စရိုက်များကို ဖော်ပြလျက်ရှိရာ လူမှုလောကတွင် ရှင်သန်နေဆဲဖြစ်ကြောင်း တွေ့ရသည်။ မောင်ထင်၏ ကိုဒေါင်း ဝတ္ထုရှိ ထားဝယ်လုံချည်တွင် သရော်ဟန် အများဆုံးရေးသားထားသည်ကို တွေ့ရသည်။ ဘာသာစကား အသုံးနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှုကို တင်ပြနိုင်သည့်အတွက် လူကြိုက်များအောင် ဖော်ဆောင်နိုင်သည့် ဝတ္ထုများဖြစ်သည်။ မောင်ထင်၏ ဘာသာစကားအသုံးနှင့် အနက်ဆက်သွယ်မှုစာတမ်းကိုကြည့်၍ အခြားသော စာပေများကိုလည်း ဆက်လက်လေ့လာနိုင်ပါသည်။

ကျမ်းကိုးစာရင်း

ခင်မင်၊ မောင်၊ (ခန့်ဖြူ)။ ၂၀၁၁။ *ရှေးဟန်ပညာနိဒါန်း* ။ ရန်ကုန်။ စိတ်ကူးချိုချိုစာပေ။
 ခင်အေး၊ ဒေါက်တာ။ ၂၀၀၄။ *အတ္ထုပ္ပတ္တိနိဒါန်း* ။ ရန်ကုန်။ ပညာတန်ဆောင်ပုံနှိပ်တိုက်။
 ဇော်ဂျီ၊ ၁၉၉၈။ *ကဗျာပေါင်းချုပ်* ။ ရန်ကုန်။ စာပေလောကပုံနှိပ်တိုက်။
 တာရာ၊ ဒဂုန်။ ၂၀၀၅။ *ကဗျာပေါင်းချုပ်* ။ ရာပြည့်စာအုပ်တိုက်။
 ထင်၊ မောင်။ ၂၀၁၈။ *ကိုဒေါင်း* ။ ရန်ကုန်။ ပါရမီစာပေ။
 ဖေမောင်တင်၊ ဦး။ ၁၉၆၁။ *မြန်မာဝါကျဖွဲ့ထုံးကျမ်း* ။ ၈-ကြိမ်၊ ရန်ကုန်။ စာပေဗိမာန်။
 မြန်မာစာအဖွဲ့ဦးစီးဌာန၊ ၁၉၉၉။ *ခရီးဆောင်မြန်မာအဘိဓာန်* ။ ရန်ကုန်။
 သော်ဇင်၊ ဦး။ ၁၉၆၆။ *စာပေရေးရာအလင်္ကာ* ။ ရန်ကုန်။ မျိုးညွန့်စာပေ။

Holliday M.A.K (1973), *Exptorations in the Functions of Language*, London Edward Arroid.

Leech, Geoffrey (1974), *Semantics*, Hormondsworth Penguin Book L.td.

A Study on the relation between United Nations Security Council and International Court of Justice

Nan Thin Thiri Myat Thu¹

Abstract

United Nations (UN) is an intergovernmental organization responsible for maintaining international peace and security, developing friendly relations among nations achieving international cooperation, and being a center for harmonizing the actions of nations. Through the United Nations Charter, the UN Security Council represents the most powerful executive institutional body in the field of collective security. The General Assembly and the Security Council may, however, seek advisory opinion from the ICJ in matters associated with the legal questions. This article examines whether the ICJ has implied power to conduct judicial review in matters undertaken by the Security Council where legal questions are involved. The Security Council of the United Nations has primary responsibility, under the Charter, for the maintenance of international peace and security. The International Court of Justice sometimes called the World Court, is the principal judicial organ of the United Nations. The ICJ's primary functions are to settle international legal disputes submitted by states and give advisory opinions on legal issues referred to it by the UN. The relation between the Security Council and the International Court of Justice is established by the Charter of the United Nations as well as by the Court's Statute. ICJ is the principal judicial organ of the United Nations and is a body to which States may refer their legal disputes under Article 36 of the UN Charter, the Security Council can make a recommendation for action to be taken.

Key words; United Nations, International Court of Justice, Security Council, United Nations Charter.

¹ Daw Nan Thin Thiri Myat Thu, Assistant Lecturer, Department of Law

1. INTRODUCTION

In 1899, the first International Peace Conference was held in The Hague to elaborate a multilateral instrument for settling crises peacefully, preventing wars and codifying rules of warfare. It adopted the Convention for the Pacific Settlement of International Disputes and established the Permanent Court of Arbitration, which began its work in 1902. Subsequently, in 1919, the League of Nations, conceived during the First World War, was established under the Treaty of Versailles to promote international cooperation and to achieve peace and security. While the League of Nations ceased activities after failing to prevent the Second World War, the need for peaceful resolution of conflicts through international collaboration and dialogue continued to grow. The term United Nations was coined by United States President Franklin D. Roosevelt during the Second World War. The United Nations was established after World War II succeeding the ineffective League of Nations. The United Nations is an international organization founded on 24 October 1945. Headquartered in New York. It is currently made up of 193 Member States. The mission and work of the United Nations are guided by the purposes and principles contained in its founding Charter. The main organs of the United Nations are the General Assembly, the Security Council, the Economic and Social Council, the Trusteeship Council, the International Court of Justice and the UN Secretariat. The United Nations family, however, is much larger, encompassing 15 specialized agencies, numerous funds and programmes, as well as other entities.

1.1 Objective of the Study

The objective of the study are as follows:

- ❖ To know United Nations function and maintaining worldwide peace and security.
- ❖ To know the Security Council has primary responsibility, under the United

Nations Charter, for the maintenance of international peace and security.

- ❖ To know the functions of the International Court of Justice and principal judicial organ of the United Nations.
- ❖ To know giving an advisory opinion on any legal question from the Security Council to ICJ.

1.2 Method of the study

This paper is mainly based on secondary data sources available in printed books, law author books, academic journals and Charter of the United Nations and other online sources.

1.3 Limitations

The main object of this paper is to study the functions of the United Nations Security Council and International Court of Justice. The relation between the requesting an advisory opinion on a specific legal issue between states could help resolve matters that causes an impasse and assist the relevant parties in moving forward to resolve further issues.

2. Main organs of the United Nations

The United Nations has six main organs. Five of them- the General Assembly, the Security Council, the Economic and Social Council, the Trusteeship Council and the Secretariat, are based at UN Headquarters in New York. The sixth, the International Court of Justice is located at the Hague in the Netherlands. The six organs of the United Nations are outlined in the sections below:

General Assembly

The General Assembly is the chief deliberative, policy making and representative organ of the UN. It is composed of representatives of all member states, each of which has one vote. Decisions on important questions require a

two third majority. Decisions on other questions take place by simple majority.

Security Council

Under the Charter, the Security Council has primary responsibility for the maintenance of international peace and security. It has 15 members and each member has one vote. Under the Charter, all member States are obligated to comply with Council decisions. The Security Council takes the lead in determining the existence of a threat to the peace or act of aggression. Its call upon the parties to a dispute to settle it by peaceful means and recommends methods of adjustment or terms of settlement. In some cases, the Security Council can resort to imposing sanctions or even authorize the use of force to maintain or restore international peace and security. The Security Council has a Presidency, which rotates, and changes, every month.

Economic and Social Council

The Charter of the United Nations established the Economic and Social Council as the principal organ to coordinate the economic and social and related work of the United Nations and the specialized agencies and other bodies. Building on its coordination role with the UN system, the Council is a gateway for UN partnership and participation by the rest of the world. The 54 members of the Council serve for three year terms. Seats on the Council are allocated based on geographical representation, with 14 allocated to African states, 11 to Asian states, 6 to Eastern European states, 10 to Latin America and Caribbean states and 13 to Western European and other states. Voting in the Council is by simple majority, with each member having one vote.²

² Basic facts about the United Nations, United Nations Department of Public Information, New York, 2011, p-5,7,12.

Trusteeship Council

The Trusteeship Council was originally established by the Charter to provide international supervision for 11 Trust Territories placed under the administration for seven member states, and to ensure that adequate steps were taken to prepare the Territories for self-government or independence. It carried out this work for forty-nine years. The last was Palau, formerly part of the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, which became a member state of the United Nations in December 1994.

International Court of Justice

The International Court of Justice is the principal judicial organ of the United Nations. Its seat is at the Peace Palace in the Hague. The Court's role is to settle, in accordance with international law, legal disputes submitted to it by States and to give advisory opinions on legal questions referred to it by authorized United Nations and specialized agencies. The Court is charged with settling legal disputes between States and giving advisory opinions to the United Nations and its specialized agencies. According to Article 1 of the Statute of the ICJ, The International Court of Justice established by the Charter of the United Nations as the principal judicial organ of the United Nations shall be constituted and shall function in accordance with the provisions of the present Statute. The Statute of the ICJ is divided into 5 Chapters and consists of 70 articles. The 69 Articles are grouped in 5 Chapters;

- Chapter I; Organization of Court (Article 2-33)
- Chapter II; Competence of the Court (Article 34-38)
- Chapter III; Procedure (Article 39-64)
- Chapter IV; Advisory Opinions (Article 65-68)
- Chapter V; Amendment (Article 69-70).

Under Article 38, the court is allowed to decide a case *ex aequo et bono* if the parties agree there to.

Secretariat

The UN Secretariat, consisting of staff representative of all nationalities working in duty stations all over the world, carries out of the day to day work of the organization. Calling upon some 41,000 staff members worldwide, the Secretariat services the other principal organ of the United Nations and administers the programmes and policies established by them. The duties carried out by the Secretariat are wide-ranging. These extend from administering peacekeeping operations, mediating international disputes and organizing humanitarian relief programmes to surveying economic and social trends, preparing studies on human rights and sustainable development and laying the groundwork for international agreements.

The United Nations System includes the United Nations and its subsidiary bodies, specialized agencies, and affiliated organizations. Some of the organizations of the United Nations system predate the founding of the United Nations in 1945. The United Nations, its subsidiary bodies, thirteen of the specialized agencies (ILO, FAO, UNESCO, WHO, ICAO, UPU, ITU, WMO, IMO, WIPO, IFAD, UNIDO, and UNWTO), and one related body (IAEA) are part of the UN common system.³

2.1 Purposes and Principles of the United Nations

The purposes of the United Nations are;

- Maintain international peace and security;
- Develop friendly relations among nations based on respect for the principle

of equal rights and self-determination of peoples;

- Cooperate in solving international economic, social, cultural and humanitarian problems in promoting respect for human rights and fundamental freedoms;
- Be a center for harmonizing the actions of nations in attaining these common ends.

The United Nations acts in accordance with the following principles;

- ❖ It is based on the sovereign equality of all its members;
- ❖ All members are to fulfil in good faith their Charter obligations;
- ❖ They are to settle their international disputes by peaceful means and without endangering international peace, security and justice;
- ❖ They are to refrain from the threat or use of force against any other state;
- ❖ They are to give the United Nations every assistance in any action it takes in accordance with the Charter;
- ❖ Nothing in the Charter is to authorize the United Nations to intervene in matters which are essentially within the domestic jurisdiction of any state.⁴

Originally, there were 51 members of the UN. Today, however, there are 193 member countries, which includes most of the countries around the world. Membership in the UN is generally open to any country that is peace-loving and agrees to be bound by principles in the UN Charter. U Thant was a Burmese diplomat and the third Secretary-General of the United Nations from 1961 to 1971.⁵

³ Basic facts about the United Nations, United Nations Department of Public Information, New York, 2017, p-3

⁴ Basic Facts about the United Nations, United Nations Department of Public Information, New York, 2017, p-5

⁵ <https://www.un.org>, About the United Nations.

2.2 Functions and Power of the Security Council

Under the Charter, the functions and powers of the Security Council includes;

- Maintain international peace and security in accordance with the principles and purposes of the United Nations;
- Investigate any dispute or situation that might lead to international friction, and recommend methods of adjustment or terms of settlement;
- Call on the parties to a dispute to settle it by peaceful means;
- Formulate plans for establishing a system to regulate armaments;
- Determine the existence of a threat to the peace or act of aggression and recommend what action should be taken;
- Call on the parties concerned to comply with such provisional measures as it deems necessary or desirable to prevent an aggravation of the situation;
- Call on members of the United Nations to apply sanctions and other measures not involving the use of armed force to give effect to the Council's decisions;
- Resort to or authorize the use of force to maintain or restore international peace and security.
- Encourage the peaceful settlement of local disputes through regional arrangements and use such regional arrangements for enforcement under its authority;
- Recommend to the General Assembly the appointment of the Secretary-General and, together with the Assembly, elect the judges of the International Court of Justice (ICJ);
- Request the ICJ to give an advisory opinion on any legal question; and
- Recommend to the General Assembly the admission of new members to the United Nations.⁶

⁶ Basic Facts about the United Nations, 2017, P-7

The functions and powers of the Security Council, as provided for in Article 24, of the Charter of the United Nations.

1. In order to ensure prompt and effective action by the United Nations, its members confer on the Security Council primary responsibility for the maintenance of international peace and security, and agree that in carrying out its duties under this responsibility the Security Council acts on their behalf.
2. In discharging these duties the Security Council shall act in accordance with the Purposes and Principles of the United Nations. The specific powers granted to the Security Council for the discharge of these duties are laid down in Chapter VI, VII, VIII and XII.
3. The Security Council shall submit annual and, when necessary special reports to the General Assembly for its consideration.⁷

2.3 International Court of Justice

The ICJ is the successor of the Permanent Court of International Justice (PCIJ), which was established by the League of Nations in 1920 and began its first session in 1922. After the Second World War, both the League and the PCIJ were succeeded by the United Nations and ICJ, respectively. The Statute of the ICJ draws heavily from that of its predecessor, and the latter's decisions remain valid. All members of the UN are party to the ICJ Statute. The ICJ comprises a panel of 15 judges elected by the General Assembly and Security Council for nine-year terms. The court is seated in the Peace Palace in The Hague, Netherlands, making it the only principal U.N. organ not located in New York City. Its official working languages are English and French.

The International Court of Justice (ICJ), sometimes called the World Court, is the principal judicial organ of the United

⁷ Charter of United Nations and Statute of the International Court of Justice, United Nations, New York, P-15.

Nations (UN). The ICJ's primary functions are to settle international legal disputes submitted by states (contentious cases) and give advisory opinions on legal issues referred to it by the UN.⁸

2.4 Establishment of the International Court of Justice

In 1942 the United States and United Kingdom jointly declared support for establishing or re-establishing an international court after the war, and in 1943, the U.K. chaired a panel of jurists from around the world, the "Inter-Allied Committee", to discuss the matter. Its 1944 report recommended that:

- The statute of any new international court should be based on that of the PCIJ;
- The new court should retain an advisory jurisdiction;
- Acceptance of the new court's jurisdiction should be voluntary;
- The court should deal only with judicial and not political matters

Several months later, a conference of the major Allied Powers China, the USSR, the U.K., and the U.S. issued a joint declaration recognizing the necessity "of establishing at the earliest practicable date a general international organization, based on the principle of the sovereign equality of all peace-loving States, and open to membership by all such States, large and small, for the maintenance of international peace and security".

In April 1946, the PCIJ was formally dissolved, and the ICJ, in its first meeting, elected as President José Gustavo Guerrero of El Salvador, who had served as the last President of the PCIJ. The Court also appointed members of its Registry, drawn largely from that of the PCIJ, and held an inaugural public sitting later that month. The

first case was submitted in May 1947 by the United Kingdom against Albania concerning incidents in the Corfu Channel.⁹

2.5 Organisation of the International Court of Justice

The Court is to be 'composed of a body of independent judges, elected regardless of their nationality from among persons of high moral character, who possess the qualifications required in their respective countries for appointment to the highest judicial office or are jurist-consults of recognised competence in international law'. The Court is composed of 15 judges elected for a nine year term by the General Assembly and the Security Council. The number was originally eleven judges and four deputy judges. Subsequently the number of judges was increased to fifteen and the provision as to deputy judges was suppressed. Judges are not representatives of the States of which they happen to be nationals. Article 3, lays down that no two members of the Court may be nationals of the same state. In view of the paramount importance of the process of nomination and of election of judges generally, a list of candidates having been prepared in this way, the General Assembly and the Security Council proceed 'independently of one another' but in effect simultaneously, to elect the members of the Court, no person being considered as elected who does not obtain an absolute majority of votes both in General Assembly and in Security Council. The members of the Court are elected for nine years and are re-eligible. The judges elected at the first session, the terms of five judges shall expire at the end of three years and the terms of five more judges shall expire at the end of six years.¹⁰ The composition of the Court has also to reflect the main forms of civilization and the

⁸ www.en.wikipedia.org. International Court of Justice.

⁹ <https://www.icj-cij.org>, International Court of Justice.

¹⁰ <https://www.SecurityCouncil.org/InHindsight>: The Security Council and the International Court of Justice.

principal legal system of the world. The result is that every three years five judges are elected by the General Assembly and the Security Council in addition to any vacancies to be filled as the result of resignation, death or dismissal. When engaged on the business of the Court judges enjoy diplomatic privileges and immunities.¹¹

Article 31 of the statute sets out a procedure whereby *ad hoc* judges sit on contentious cases before the court. The system allows any party to a contentious case (if it otherwise does not have one of that party's nationals sitting on the court) to select one additional person to sit as a judge on that case only. It is thus possible that as many as seventeen judges may sit on one case.¹²

2.6 Mission of the International Court of Justice

The Court has a two fold role, first to settle in accordance with international law, legal disputes submitted to it by states and second, to give advisory opinions on legal questions referred to it by duly authorized United Nations organs and agencies of the UN system. Contentious cases have represented 80 percent of the work of ICJ since its creation and it has delivered over a hundred judgements on disputes concerning, for example; international boundaries and territory sovereignty, violations of international humanitarian law, and diplomatic relations. The Court has also rendered nearly 30 advisory opinions.¹³

2.7 Advisory Jurisdiction of the Court

The Court is open to all states that are parties to its Statute, which includes all members of the United Nations. Only states

may be parties in contentious cases before the Court and submit disputes to it. Article 65 of the Statute lays down that the Court may give an advisory opinion on any legal question at the request of whatever body may be authorised to do so by the Charter of the United Nations or in accordance with it. These bodies are, according to Article 96 of the Charter, the General Assembly, the Security Council and other organs of the United Nations and Specialized Agencies authorised by the General Assembly to ask for Advisory Opinions. The number of advisory opinions given by the Court almost equals that given by ways of judgements.¹⁴ The Court shall apply;

- (a) International Conventions, whether general or particular, establishing rules expressly recognised by the contesting States.
- (b) International Custom, as evidence of a general practice accepted as law.
- (c) The general principles of law recognised by the civilised nations.
- (d) Subject to the provisions of Article 59, judicial decisions and the teachings of the most highly qualified publicists of the various nations, as subsidiary means for the determination of rules of law. This provision shall not prejudice the power of the Court to decide a case *ex aequo et bono*, if the parties agree thereto.¹⁵

2.8 The relationship between the International Court of Justice and the Security Council

The relationship between the ICJ and the [Security Council](#), and the separation of their powers, was considered by the court in 1992 in the [Pan Am case](#). The court had to consider an application from Libya for the order of provisional measures to protect its

¹¹ International and Comparative Law Quarterly, British Institute of International and Comparative Law, Volume 46, Issue 2, April 1997, P-309.

¹² www.en.m.wikipedia.org.International Court of Justice.

¹³ Basic Facts about the United Nations, 42nd Edition, 2017, P-16.

¹⁴ Oppenheim, International law, A Treatise, Disputes, War and Neutrality, Seventh Edition, Longmans, Green and Co Ltd. Printed in Great Britain, 1952.

¹⁵ Charter of the United Nations and Statute of the International Court of Justice, United Nations, New York, 1945

rights, which, it alleged, were being infringed by the threat of economic sanctions by the United Kingdom and United States. The problem was that these sanctions had been authorized by the Security Council, which resulted in a potential conflict between the Chapter VII functions of the Security Council and the judicial function of the court. The court decided, by eleven votes to five, that it could not order the requested provisional measures because the rights claimed by Libya, even if legitimate under the [Montreal Convention](#), could not be *prima facie* regarded as appropriate since the action was ordered by the Security Council.¹⁶

In accordance with Article 103 of the UN Charter, obligations under the Charter took precedence over other treaty obligations. Nevertheless, the court declared the application admissible in 1998. A decision on the merits has not been given since the parties (United Kingdom, United States, and Libya) settled the case out of court in 2003.

The relationship between the International Court of Justice and the Security Council may be approached from the perspective of the United Nations Charter and the way it delimits competences between two principal UN organs and regulates the exercise of their concurrent powers. The Court, however, has a dual ambivalent role. It is not only the principal judicial organ of the United Nations under Article 92 of the Charter, it is also an autonomous adjudicative body with the function under Article 38 of its Statute, of applying international law to such disputes between states as are brought before it.

The role of the International Court of Justice attained its legal ground in 1945 by means of the Charter of United Nations, whereby it assesses its function as the principal judicial organ of the United Nations. The ICJ acts in accordance with the UN Charter and an annexed Statute of the International Court of Justice in two different fields: non-binding

advisory opinions and continuous cases with mandatory consequences for the states involved.

Advisory opinions

Firstly, the ICJ is entitled to provide the General Assembly and the Security Council with an advisory opinion on any legal question. Moreover, a request for an advisory opinion might also be made by the other organ of the United Nations and specialised agencies with authorization of the General Assembly on legal questions arising from the scope of their activities. Article 93 of the Charter which declared that all Members of the United Nations are *ipso facto* parties to the Statute of the International Court of Justice. Other Articles of the Charter, such as those relating to the enforcement of the Judgments of the Court and its advisory jurisdiction at the request of the organs of the United Nations, give additional expression to that association of the Court with the United Nations. The advisory jurisdiction has in fact proved to be much more fertile and more important than was originally contemplated. The number of advisory opinions given by the court almost equals that given by way of judgments. The advisory function of the court is designed primarily to assist the Security Council and the General Assembly in the discharge of their duties of conciliating and reporting upon disputes submitted to them, by affording them an authoritative legal opinion upon points of law. There are no parties when the Court is exercising its advisory jurisdiction, but the Statute instructs the Court to give notice of the request for an advisory opinion to all States entitled to appear before the Court and international organizations considered by the Court as likely to be able to furnish information on the question. They are to be informed that the Court will be prepared to receive written statements or to hear, at a public sitting to be

¹⁶ en.m.wikipedia.org, International Court of Justice.

held for the purpose, oral statements relating to the question.¹⁷

Contentious cases

The jurisdiction of the International Court of Justice subsumes cases which the parties refer to it and matters especially provided for in the Charter of the United Nations or in other treaties and conventions in force. The Security Council can make a recommendation that a legal dispute should be, as a general law, referred by the parties under the Court's jurisdiction. The decisions of the ICJ are, in contentious cases, binding solely on an inter-party basis. When examining the aptitude of the ICJ as the proper body to review the legality of the SC's actions, it is worth noting the case that brought this issue into wider discussion.

Only States may apply to and appear before the International Court of Justice. International organizations, other authorities and private individuals are not entitled to institute proceedings before the Court. The Court can only deal with a dispute when the States concerned have recognized its jurisdiction. No State can therefore be a party to proceedings before the Court unless it has in some manner or other consented thereto.¹⁸

2.9 Jurisdiction of the International Court of Justice

The International Court of Justice has jurisdiction in two types of cases; contentious cases between states in which the court produces binding rulings between states that agree, or have previously agreed, to submit to the ruling of the court; and advisory opinions, which provide reasoned, but non-binding, rulings on properly submitted questions of international law, usually at the request of the United Nations

General Assembly. Advisory opinions do not have to concern particular controversies between states, though they often do.¹⁹

2.9.1 The Lockerbie Case

On 21 December 1988, N 739PA, a bomb exploded in the cargo hold of Pan Am Flight 103, on its way to New York's John F. Kennedy Airport, exploded over Lockerbie, a town in Southern Scotland. All 259 passengers and crew, as well as eleven Lockerbie residents also were killed as the shattered civilian carrier crashed to the ground. The investigation that followed indicated that Libya and Libya agents were almost exclusively responsible for the bombing. On November 14, 1991, the United States handed down indictments against Abdel Basset Ali Al-Megrahi and Lamien Khalifa Fhimah for their role in murder of passengers and crew of Flight 103.²⁰

The UN Charter to which all parties to this dispute are signatories, prohibits aggression. Article 2(4) of the Charter of the United Nations states, All members shall refrain in their international relations from the threat or use of force against the territorial integrity or political independence of any state, or in any other manner inconsistent with the Purpose of the United Nations. The Security Council resolutions were responding to the Libyan aggression specify article 2(4) as the basis for international action. According to United Nations Security Council Resolution 731 and 748, in Resolution 731 requested Libya to comply with U.S., U.K. and French requests concerning the bombing of Pan Am Flight 103. Under the terms of the resolution, Libya was required to renounce terrorism and to surrender the individuals involved in the bombing of Pan Am Flight 103.²¹

¹⁷ Oppenheim, International law, A Treatise, Disputes, War and Neutrality, Seventh Edition, Longmans, Green and Co Ltd. Printed in Great Britain, 1952.

¹⁸ <https://www.icj-cij.org/contentious-jurisdiction>

¹⁹ [https://en.m.wikipedia.org/Jurisdiction of the International Court of Justice](https://en.m.wikipedia.org/Jurisdiction_of_the_International_Court_of_Justice)

²⁰ [https://en.m.wikipedia.org/Pan Am Flight 103.](https://en.m.wikipedia.org/Pan_Am_Flight_103)

²¹ A Preview of the Lockerbie Case, Michale P. Scharf, American Society of International Law, Volume: 5,

The Security Council adopted Resolution 748, was adopted under Chapter VII of the United Nations Charter and imposed mandatory sanctions on Libya. A combination of events had led Libya to challenge the imposition of sanctions in the ICJ. The Libyans refused to surrender the individuals and then brought the Lockerbie incident cases before the ICJ for three reasons. First, Libya was concerned that to surrender Al Megrahi and Fhimah would be tantamount to admitting guilt, a proposition the Libyan government was probably unwilling to face. Second, the refusal to surrender the men and the following application to the ICJ were attempts to stall the prosecution and the sanctions. Finally, according to Libya, it could not surrender Al Megrahi and Fhimah because Libyan domestic law prohibits the extradition of nationals. ICJ Justices have expressed that examining the validity and effect of Security Council decisions relevant to a case is paramount to its judicial function, particularly because the political intervention of the Security Council in certain matters does not prevent the exercise of ICJ's judicial function. Despite its political character, the Security Council is subject under Article 24(2) of the Charter to observe certain limitations imposed by UN principles and purposes. The UN Charter authorizes the Security Council to act on behalf of all United Nations members in order to maintain international peace and security. Every United Nations member is bound by a Security Council resolution. As an organ of the United Nations, the Security Council independently determines its own jurisdiction to act in pursuit of its overarching responsibility for the maintenance of international peace and security.²²

As a result of extensive three year long investigation, the U.S and the U.K presented

the case before the UN Security Council and the General Assembly. In January and March 1992, the Security Council adopted two resolutions on this matter: the first, Resolution 731, urged Libya to respond fully and effectively to the request of U.S and U.K and France. While the second, Resolution 748, imposed economic sanctions on Libya. The sanctions were extended in 1993. Libya then brought the case before the International Court of Justice seeking provisional measures to prevent the U.S or the U.K from taking any action to coerce Libya into handing over the two suspects or otherwise prejudicing the rights claimed by Libya. On 14 April 1992, the ICJ declined to order the provisional measures, thereby confirming the validity and binding force of Resolution 748. The ICJ's ruling means that under Article 103 of the Charter including the Montreal Convention.²³

2.9.2 Jadhav Case (India v. Pakistan)

Kulbhushan Sudhir Jadhav is an Indian national. It is alleged by the Pakistani government that he was arrested in the Pakistani province of Balochistan on charges of terrorism and spying for India's intelligence agency.²⁴

On 8 May 2017, India filed an Application instituting proceedings against Pakistan in respect of a dispute concerning alleged violations of the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations of 24 April 1963 "in the matter of the detention and trial of an Indian national, Mr. Kulbhushan Sudhir Jadhav", who had been sentenced to death by a military court in Pakistan in April 2017. India claimed that Pakistan had failed to inform it, without delay, of the arrest and detention of its national. It further contended that Mr. Jadhav had not been informed of his rights under Article 36 of the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations, and that India's consular officers had been denied

²² The Relationship Between the International Court of the Justice and the Security Council in the Light of the Lockerbie Case, Vera Gowlland Debbas, Cambridge University Press, The American Journal of International Law, Vol. 88, No.4, PP-643-649

²³ www.ejil.org>pdf, The Lockerbie Case: The Role of the Security Council in Enforcing the Principle, European Journal of International Law.

²⁴ [En.m.wikipedia.org](http://en.m.wikipedia.org). Kulbhushan Jadhav.

access to Mr. Jadhav while he was in custody, detention and prison, and had been unable to converse and correspond with him, or arrange for his legal representation. As basis for the Court's jurisdiction, India referred in its Application to Article 36, paragraph 1, of the Statute of the Court and Article I of the Optional Protocol to the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations concerning the Compulsory Settlement of Disputes. On the same day, India also filed a Request for the indication of provisional measures, requesting the Court to direct Pakistan to "take all measures necessary to ensure that Mr. Kulbhushan Sudhir Jadhav is not executed" and to "ensure that no action is taken that might prejudice the rights of the Republic of India or Mr. Kulbhushan Sudhir Jadhav with respect to any decision the Court may render on the merits of the case".

By an Order dated 18 May 2017, the Court directed Pakistan to "take all measures at its disposal" to ensure that Mr. Jadhav would not be executed pending a final decision in the case, and to inform the Court of all the measures taken in implementation of that Order. It also decided that, until the Court had given its final decision, it would remain seized of the matters which formed the subject matter of the Order. Public hearings on the merits of the case were held from 18 to 21 February 2019. In its Judgment of 17 July 2019, the Court first outlined the background of the dispute, before concluding that it had jurisdiction to entertain India's claims based on alleged violations of the Vienna Convention. The Court next addressed the three objections to admissibility raised by Pakistan, which were based on India's alleged abuse of process, abuse of rights and unlawful conduct. The Court concluded that India's Application was admissible. Turning to the merits of the case, the Court examined in turn each of Pakistan's three contentions concerning the applicability of the Vienna Convention. Having found that none of the arguments raised by Pakistan could be upheld, the Court concluded that the Vienna Convention

was applicable in the case, "regardless of the allegations that Mr. Jadhav was engaged in espionage activities".

Next, the Court examined India's claim that Pakistan had acted in violation of its obligations under Article 36 of the Vienna Convention, by failing to inform India, without delay, of Mr. Jadhav's detention. The Court observed that Pakistan did not contest India's assertion that Mr. Jadhav had not been informed of his rights under Article 36, paragraph 1 (*b*), of the Convention, and thus concluded that Pakistan had breached its obligation under that provision. As regards Pakistan's alleged breach of its obligation to inform India, without delay, of the arrest and detention of Mr. Jadhav, as provided for in Article 36, paragraph 1 (*b*), of the Vienna Convention, the Court found that since Pakistan had failed to inform Mr. Jadhav of his rights, it was under an obligation to inform India's consular post of his arrest and detention, that obligation also being implied by the rights of consular officers, under Article 36, paragraph 1 (*c*) of the Convention, to visit the national, "to converse and correspond with him and to arrange for his legal representation". The Court then pointed out that Pakistan had notified India of Mr. Jadhav's arrest and detention on 25 March 2016, some three weeks after his arrest; taking account of the particular circumstances of the case, the Court considered that Pakistan had thus breached its obligation to inform the consular post "without delay", as required by Article 36, paragraph 1 (*b*), of the Vienna Convention. The Court then turned to India's third claim concerning Pakistan's alleged failure to allow Indian consular officers to communicate with Mr. Jadhav, recalling in this regard that "Article 36, paragraph 1, creates individual rights, which, by virtue of Article I of the Optional Protocol, may be invoked in this Court by the national State of the detained person". It being undisputed that Pakistan had not granted any Indian consular officer access to Mr. Jadhav, the Court was of the view that India's alleged

failure to co-operate in the investigation process in Pakistan did not relieve Pakistan of its obligation to grant consular access, and did not justify Pakistan's denial of access to Mr. Jadhav by consular officers of India. Further, Mr. Jadhav's choice to be represented by a defending officer qualified for legal representation did not dispense with the consular officers' right to arrange for his legal representation. The Court therefore concluded that Pakistan had breached the obligations incumbent on it under Article 36, paragraph 1 (a) and (c), of the Vienna Convention, by denying India's consular officers access to Mr. Jadhav, contrary to their right to visit him, converse and correspond with him, and arrange for his legal representation.

With regard to India's contention that it was entitled to *restitutio in integrum*, its request for the Court to annul the decision of the military court and restrain Pakistan from giving effect to the sentence or conviction, and its further request for the Court to direct Pakistan to take steps to annul the decision of the military court, release Mr. Jadhav and facilitate his safe passage to India, the Court found that the submissions made by India could not be upheld. The Court also found, however, that Pakistan was under an obligation to provide, by means of its own choosing, effective review and reconsideration of the conviction and sentence of Mr. Jadhav, so as to ensure that full weight was given to the effect of the violation of the rights set forth in Article 36 of the Vienna Convention.²⁵

²⁵ [https://www.icj-cij.org>Jadhav\(India v. Pakistan\)](https://www.icj-cij.org/Jadhav(India%20v.%20Pakistan))

Conclusion

Through the United Nation's Charter, the UN Security Council represents the most powerful executive institutional body in the field of collective security. The advisory opinion and continuous cases give the ICJ room to provide for control over the Security Council's actions, even though reviewing capacity is not explicitly expressed in the substantive constituting documents. The Charter of the United Nations endows the Security Council with the primary responsibility for the maintenance of international peace and security. Article 94 establishes the duty of all UN members to comply with decisions of the court involving them. If parties do not comply the issue may be taken before the Security Council for enforcement action. The Charter grants the General Assembly or the Security Council a power to request the Court to issue an advisory opinion on any legal question. The ICJ is mandated to settle contentious legal disputes submitted by states against other states in accordance with international law. The Court also gives advisory opinions to the Council, the General Assembly and other authorised bodies on legal questions referred to it by these entities. Requesting an advisory opinion on a specific legal issue between states could help resolve matters that cause an impasse and assist the relevant parties in moving forward to resolve further issues.

Acknowledgement

First of all, I wish to pay my gratitude to Dr.Yi Yi Win, Rector of Co-operative University, Thanlyin. U Oo Tin Thein, Pro-Rector (Admin) of Co-operative University Thanlyin, and Daw Myint Myint Sein, Pro-Rector (Academic) of Co-operative University Thanlyin, for following me for the compilation of the title of this research "A Study on the relation between United Nations Security Council & International Court of Justice". Special thanks to Dr.Thi Thi Lwin, Professor & Head, Department of Law, East Yangon University, for her help, supervision, and comprehensive advice. In addition, a thank you to Dr.Theingi Nyo, Professor & Head, Department of Law of Co- operative University, (Thanlyin)for her guidance and encouragement. Last but not the least I would like to thank my colleagues who have helped me a lot. I humbly extend my thanks to all concerned persons who co-operated with me in this regard.

References

1. Basic Facts about the United Nations,42nd Edition,United Nations Department of Public Information,New York.2017
2. Basic Facts about the United Nations,United Nations Department of Public Information, New York. 2011
3. Charter of the United Nations and Statute of the International Court of Justice.
4. International Law,A Treatise, VOL.II, Disputes,War and Neutrality,Seventh Edition, Longmans,Green and Co Ltd.Printed in Great Britain.1952
5. <https://www.securitycouncilreport.org> In Hindsight:The Security Council and the International Court of Justice.
6. <https://www.un.org.repertoire.InternationalTribunals/> United Nations Security Council.
7. [http:// research – un.org/en/docs/law.icj](http://research-un.org/en/docs/law.icj)
8. [http:// www.un.org/security](http://www.un.org/security) council.
9. <http://www.en.m.wikipedia.org,President> of the United Nations Security Council.
10. The Relationship Between the International Court of the Justice and the Security Council in the Light of the Lockerbie Case, Vera Gowll and Debbas, Cambridge University Press, The American Journal of International Law, Vol. 88, No.4, PP-643-649.

11. www.ejil.org>pdf, The Lockerbie Case: The Role of the Security Council in Enforcing the Principle, European Journal of International Law
12. <https://en.m.wikipedia.org>>Pan Am Flight 103.
13. A Preview of the lockerbie Case, Michale P. Scharf, American Society of International Law, Volume: 5, <http://www.asil.org>>

A STUDY ON THE PROTECTION OF COPYRIGHT

Seng Raw¹

ABSTRACT

Intangible creation of human's intellect. Intellectual Property Rights (IPRs) are much like any other property rights, they allow the owner or creator, of patent, trademark or copyright work to benefit from his or her innovation and activity. The kinds of IP are industrial property and copyright. Copyright relates to artistic creation, such as computer programs and electronic data bases. Copyright law is a branch of that part of the IP law which deals with the rights of Intellectual creator. To define in copyright law, there will needed to state about Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artists Works (1886), Agreement on Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property Rights (IPRs) and WIPO Copyright Treaty. Myanmar Copyright Law, 2019 also contains as an essential role to know about the Copyright Law broadly.

Keyword: Copyright Law in Myanmar, 2019

INTRODUCTION

Intangible creation of human's intellect. The term of Copyright is a property right in an original of authorship (such as literary, musical, artistic, photographic or film work) fixed in any tangible medium of expression, giving the holder the exclusive right to reproduce, adapt, distribute, perform and display the works. Copyright Law has been standardized to some extend through international conventions such as the Berne Convention, Rome Convention and Universal Copyright Convention. Myanmar adopted the Copyright law, 2019. Myanmar Copyright Law is promulgated and thus it is needed to study this Law. The term of Copyright protection in Myanmar is for a period of the life of the author plus 50 years although the amount of fine and punishment are amended in accordance with the existing situation.

Objectives of the study

The objectives of this study are as follows;

- To know the nature of Intellectual Property

¹ Tutor, Department of Law, co-operative University, Thanlyin

- To know the historical background of copyright law
- To know how to solve infringement of copyright in Myanmar

Method of the Study

The data sources are based on secondary data. The secondary data used from Law, Convention, author books, other related laws and internet sources.

2. NATURE OF INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY

Property is something capable of ownership. There are three characteristics of property, namely: *Possidendi* (the right to possess), *utendi* (the right to use) and *dispodendi* (the right to dispose of). Both tangible and intangible are categories of property. Tangible property such as land or chattels (moveable properties) contains of physical things that can occupy only one place at any give time. The possession of a physical thing is necessarily exclusive so that if it is owned. Intellectual property does not suffer from the characteristics of excludability. For instance, if A has a particular piece of information and tell it to B, A is not deprived of it. Rather, both can possess it. Thus, intellectual property is intangible and incorporeal.²

IP is all around us. Every product or service that we use in our daily lives is the result of a long chain of big or small innovation, such as new designs or improvements that make a product look or function better.³

The areas mentioned as literary, artistic and scientific works belong to the copyright branch of intellectual property. The areas mentioned as performances of performing artistic, phonograms and broadcasts are usually called “related rights”, that is, rights related to copyrights.⁴

Intellectual Property includes diverse forms of human’s intellectual creations. However, concept of Intellectual Property differs from time to time. “The change information technology, market reality (globalization) and generality have affected the contents of Intellectual Property” (U Than Maung, Sittwe).

2.1 Definition of Intellectual Property and Intellectual Property Right

Intellectual Property Rights mean the power vested by law for protecting creation of own intellectual. In that work, the copyright, the right of patent, the right

² C L Bansal, Business and corporate law, 2010, P-723

³ IP Panorama, the most advanced e-learning content on Intellectual Property for Your business developed by WIPO, KIPO and KIPA, p-4

⁴ Intellectual Property Hand book: Policy, Law and Use, WIPO, 2nd edition, 2008, P-3

of industrial design, the right of trademark and other types of rights are also inclusive.⁵

Intellectual Property (IP), very broadly, means the legal rights which result from intellectual activity in the industrial, scientific, literary and artistic fields.⁶ Intellectual Property Rights (IPRs) are the legally recognized exclusive rights creation of the mind.⁷

Intellectual Property Rights (IPRs) are like any other property rights. They allow creators or owners, of patents, trademarks or copyrighted works to benefit from their own works or investment in a creation. The most common Intellectual Property Rights (IPRs) include patents, copyrights marks and trade secrets.⁸

Intellectual Property is a type of property that contains intangible of the human mind. A kind of intangible rights is protecting commercially precious products of the human mind.

2.2 Role of Intellectual Property

The term Intellectual Property has been used for almost one hundred and fifty years to refer to the general area of law that encompasses copyright, patents, designs and trademarks, as well as a host of related rights.⁹

Generally speaking, IP law protects innovators and other producers of intellectual goods and services by allowing them specific time-limited rights to control the use of those productions.¹⁰

Intellectual Property could be defined as the production and creation of human intellect, including patent rights, new creation, etc. Every nation promulgates laws in order to protect Intellectual Property such as,

- (a) To provide lawful protections of the intellectual and ownership rights of the innovators in their production and that rights are mass people's access to those innovations and intellectual properties
- (b) To promote the production, distribution and usage of the intellectual property's outcomes as a part of the government policy and to advocate fair economic transactions for contributing to the socio-economic development.

2.3 Different Kinds of Intellectual Property

⁵ Section-2(9) of the Myanmar Copyright Law, 2019

⁶ "WIPO Intellectual Property (IP) handbook, policy, law and use," 2nd edition, 2004, p-3

⁷ En.wikipedia.org/wiki/intellectual_property

⁸ www.itu.int/en/ITU-T

⁹ Lionel Bently Brad Sherman, Oxford, Intellectual Property Law, 3rd edition, 2009, P-3

¹⁰ www.ccsenet.org>jpl>article>view

Intellectual Property has the following two main branches:

1. **Industrial Property:** this is a collective name for rights arising from industrial inventions (patents), industrial designs including trade/service marks and trade/service names. The three forms of industrial property are briefly enumerated below:
 - ❖ Inventions (patents): these are new solutions to technological problems.
 - ❖ Industrial Designs: these are aesthetic creations affecting the appearance of industrial products.
 - ❖ Trade/service names and marks: commercial names and designations including indications of sources and protection against unfair competition also form a part of industrial property.
2. **Copyright:** this consists of intellectual activity in the literary, artistic and scientific works.¹¹

TRIPs covers eight types of Intellectual Property namely; Patents, Trade Marks, Copyright, Industrial designs, Geographical Indications, Layout and Design of Integrated Circuits, Protection of Undisclosed Information and Protection of Anti-Competitive Practices in Contractual Licenses. A discussion of the laws relating to patents, trademarks and copyrights follows hereto.¹²

3. INTERNATIONAL LAW RELATING TO COPYRIGHT

International copyright is a copyright which by force of international agreement is extended, in reference to the protection granted an author, beyond the territorial limits of the jurisdiction in which it was obtained.

In the field of traditional copyright (author rights) the main international instruments are:

- The Berne Convention administered by WIPO
- The TRIPs Agreement administered by the World Trade Organization (WTO)
- The newly established WIPO Copyright Treaty (WCT)

In the field of neighboring rights the main international instruments are:

- The Rome Convention

¹¹ C L Bansal, Business and corporate law, 2010, P-724

¹² Ibid.

- The Phonograms Convention
- The Satellite Convention
- The TRIPs Agreement
- The newly established WIPO Performances and Phonograms Treaty.¹³

3.1 Berne Convention, 1886

The Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works, usually known as the Berne Convention, is an international Convention governing Literary and Artistic Works, which was first accepted in Berne, Switzerland, in 1889.

This Convention is based on three fundamental principles and includes a series of provisions deciding the minimum protection to be allowed, in addition to the special provisions obtainable to developing nations that want to make use of them. The three fundamental principles are as follow;

- (a) Works created in one of the contracting parties must be the equal protection in one of the other contracting parties as the latter allows to the works of its own states.
- (b) Protection must not be subject to comply with any regulation.
- (c) Protection is dependent upon the existence of protection in the nation of original work. If a contracting nation provides for a longer period of protection than minimum described by the convention and the work suspends to be protected in the nation of origin, protection can be refused once protection in the nation of origin suspends.

The treaty provides that if copyright exists in one of these countries, then this copyright is valid in all member countries (contracting parties) who are signatories of the Berne Convention. Now, there are 177 signatory countries in the world.

The Berne treaty is powerless without member states to bring its provisions to life, so WIPO actively encourages states to sign its treaties and to enforce them. Nowadays, membership of the Berne has grown 170 countries. It is contained Article-1 to Article-38 in Berne Convention and special provisions relating to developing countries. Under the Berne Convention, in general, the term of protection for copyright work is the life of the author plus 50 years but in photographic work or work of applied art, it lasts 25 years but in photographic work. Moreover, in

¹³ WIPO National Seminar on Intellectual Property, “the main international treaties administered by WIPO in the field of Copyright” Yangon, Myanmar, WIPO/IP/YGN/97/4,p.2.

cinematographic works, it lasts 50 after making publication and if failed to publish after creating of the work.

3.2 TRIPS Agreement, 1994

The TRIPs Agreement forms part of the WTO. Agreement and thus binds all WTO members, currently standing at 153. Since 1 January 1995, The United Kingdom had been one member of WTO. The TRIPs Agreement incorporates, *inter alia*, the key provisions of the Berne convention.

According to Article-12 of Section (1) of TRIPs Agreement, 1994, except a photographic work or a work of applied art, the term of protection of a work, date work first published, will be in force during the lifetime of the inventor, and until fifty years after the inventor's death.

According to Article-14(5) of Section (1) of TRIPs Agreement, 1994, performers and producers of phonograms shall be protected up to exactly 50 years since the starting print of production.

Therefore, an essential element of the TRIPs Agreement is that it settles disputes between WTO members about subject to TRIPs Agreement procedures. In TRIPs Agreement, the provisions relating to copyright are from Article-14 in Section 1. In Article14, it is provided the term for protection of performers and producers of phonograms. A distinctive feature is that it is not included the provisions relating to moral right in spite of containing economic rights in this Agreement.

3.3 WIPO Copyright Treaty(WCT), 1996

Development in technology during the 1980s and 1990s created various problems and uncertainties for the copyright law. In 1991 and succeeding years, WIPO Summoned Committees of Experts to consider these problems and to draft a possible protocol to the Berne Convention. The Diplomatic Conference on Geneva from 2 to 20 December 1996 was held that how to solve Copyright and Neighboring Rights issues. Two treaties sprang from this Conference, one of which was the WIPO Copyright Treaty 1996(WCT). The relationship of this treaty to the Berne Convention is that it is a special agreement within the meaning of Article 20 of Berne; i.e an agreement entered into by Berne Union Countries.¹⁴

This treaty allows countries of the Union to determine the term of protection for photographic works and works of applied art (in so far as they are protected as

¹⁴ Oxford, "Intellectual Property Law: Text, Cases and Material", 2nd edition, 2013, p-58.

artistic works) provided it is a minimum of 25 years from the making of the work. The effect of Article-9 of the WCT is that 50 years *post mortem auctor(pma)* will now be applicable to photographic works and works of applied art.

The treaty will come into force after 30 instruments of ratification or accession by states have been deposited with the Director General of WIPO, who is the depositary of the Treaty.¹⁵ The total number of Articles contained in this treaty is twenty-five. It is a protocol of the Berne Convention and although.

The WCT contains clarifying provisions such as Article-4, which states that computer programs are protected as literary works which in the meaning of Article-2 of the Berne Convention and Article-5, which says the same for databases. Article-2 of the emphasizes that copyright protection extends to expressions and not to ideas, procedures, methods of operation or mathematical concept as such. In terms of exclusive rights, Article-1(4) of the WCT states that contracting Parties shall comply with Article 1-21.

3.4 WIPO Performances and Phonograms Treaty, 1996

The second treaty to emerge from the Diplomatic Conference, 1996 was the WIPO performances and Phonograms Treaty, 1996. There is no provision in the WPPT imposing an obligation on Contracting States to comply with the Rome Convention, but nothing in the WPPT is taken to derogate from the existing obligations the Contracting Parties have to each other under the Rome Convention.

The Protection given to performers improves significantly on that available under the Rome Convention. This is because performances are given exclusive rights in relating to their performances and also moral rights in respect of lives, aural performances or performances fixed in phonograms. Producers of phonograms are given exclusive rights of authorizing the reproduction, distribution and commercial rental of their phonograms, as well as the making available of their phonograms via on demand transmission, such as the internet. There is also a right to equitable remuneration for the use of phonograms published for commercial purposes for broadcasting or for any communication to the public which can be claimed by the performer or producer or both.¹⁶

The term of protection for both performers and phonogram producers is 50 years, measured in the case of the former, from the end of the year in which the

¹⁵ WIPO, "Summaries of Convention, Treaties and Agreements Administered by WIPO," p-43.

¹⁶ Oxford, "Intellectual Property Law: Text, Cases and Material", 2nd edition, 2013, p-59.

performance was fixed in a phonogram and in term of the latter, 50 years from the end of the year in which the phonogram was published or failing publication within 50 years of fixation, 50 years from the end of the year in which the fixation was made.¹⁷

There are 94 countries that are parties to the WIPO Performance and Phonograms Treaty.¹⁸ Although WCT protects and maintains the rights of authors, WPPT is for the Protection of the rights of performers and producers of phonograms. It gives national treatment like after Convention.

3.5 Rome Convention, 1961

Technological developments post-World War-I led to a new trio of interests that sought copyright protection. These are producers of phonograms (i.e sound recordings), performers and broad casters.¹⁹

The Conference for the preparation of the Draft Convention was held at the Hague in 1960 and this was followed in 1961 by the Diplomatic Conference on the Protection of Performers, Producers of Phonograms and Broadcasting Organizations, in which a total of 41 States participated. The signatories to this Convention have now grown to 86, of which the UK is one.

The beneficiaries of protection are, unsurprisingly, performers, phonogram producers and broadcasting organizations.²⁰

In modern time, related right is a term in copyright law, used in opposition to the term “authors’ rights”. Both authors’ rights and related rights are copyright in the sense of English Law.

In relation to authors’ rights, related rights are independent of any authors’ rights which might also exist in the work, as is made clear in the various treaties.²¹ Hence a CD recording of a song will be concurrently protected by four different copyright-type rights;

- The authors’ rights of the composer of the music;
- The performers’ rights of the singer and the musicians;
- The authors’ rights of the lyricist;
- The producer’ rights of the person or corporation which made the recording.

¹⁷ Ibid, pp-59-60.

¹⁸ <https://www.google.com/search?hl=en-GB&s>

¹⁹ Oxford, “intellectual Property Law: Text, Cases and Material”, 2nd edition, 2013, p-56.

²⁰ Oxford, “intellectual Property Law: Text, Cases and Material”, 2nd edition, 2013, p-56.

²¹ Article-1 of the Rome Convention in 1961.

Article-14 of the Rome Convention set a minimum term for the protection of performers' rights of twenty year from the end of the year in which the performance was made; the TRIPs Agreement (Art-14(5)) has extended these fifty years.

Article-14 of the Rome Convention sets a minimum term for the protection of broad casters' rights of twenty years from the end of the years in which the broadcast was first made confirmed by the TRIPs Agreement.²²

In current situation, Rome Convention members are 122 states have ratified or acceded to the Rome Statute in 16 May 2019. Under Article-14 of the Rome Convention, the term for the protection of performers' rights is twenty years from the end of the year in which performance was made but TRIPs Agreement has extended this fifty years. And also for broadcasters' rights, the term of protection is twenty years like performer.

4 PROTECTION OF COPYRIGHT IN MYANMAR

Myanmar Copyright Law was promulgated on 24 May 2019 and at the same time Copyright Act, 1914 was repealed.

4.1 Historical Background of Copyright in Myanmar

Myanmar is not signatory country in the Berne Convention. Although Myanmar needs to implement and subjects to between Article 1 and 12, Article 19 of the Paris Convention and the terms of TRIPs by no later than 1st July 2021.

The basic law on copyright in Burma is the Copyright Act of 1911 (promulgated 1914 and the Merchandise Marks Act, 1889). Related and subsequent amending legislation are listed at the relevant WIPO page. Burma has not signed the Berne Convention but it has signed the TRIPs Agreement of the World Trade Organization. Burma is a member of the World Intellectual Property Organization. The 1911 Copyright Act (formerly known as the India Act III, 1914) was based on the 1911 Copyright Act of the United Kingdom. Despite the Act, no formal copyright registration procedure has ever been instituted in Burma. The Act also does not recognize the copyright of any other country and registration of copyright must be carried out using other methods that have been developed over the years. In 2004, new copyright legislation began to be drafted based upon the WIPO model law but that legislation has never entered into force.

²² Art-14(5) of the TRIPs Agreement in 1994.

During 2016-2017, the draft copyright law was jointly reviewed by the Attorney General's Office and the Ministry of Education (the ministry responsible for copyright). Then it was sent by the office of the Union Government to Parliament (known as the Hluttaw) where it is expected to be adopted on 24 May, 2019.²³

4.2 Definition of Copyright in Myanmar

Copyright mean the privileges regarding copyright obtained by the original inventor of copyright under this law.²⁴ Section-2(j) of Myanmar Copyright Law, 2019 states that related rights mean the privileges of entertainers, phonogram producers and transmission organizations prescribed in Chapter-14 of this Law.

According to Section-2(k) of Myanmar Copyright Law, 2019, inventor of copyright mean any person, his/her successor, or any organization founded lawfully expressed hereunder-

- (1) Original inventor;
- (2) The person who is not original inventor who has automatically obtained business rights since before or the organization founded lawfully;
- (3) The person who is transferred as an inventor of business rights in accord with law (or) the organization founded lawfully.

Owner of related rights mean any person, his/her successor, or any organization founded lawfully expressed hereunder-

- (1) Entertainer, phonogram producer and transmission organization,
- (2) The entertainer who has automatically obtained business rights since before, phonogram producer and the person that is not transmission organization (or) organization lawfully founded, and
- (3) The person who is transferred as an inventor of business rights in accord with law or the organization founded lawfully.²⁵

Copyright deals with the rights of intellectual creators in their creation. Most works, for examples books, paintings or drawings, exist only once they are embodied in a physical object. But some of them exist without embodiment in a physical object.

²³ <https://en.m.wikipedia.org/wiki>

²⁴ Section-2(i) of Myanmar Copyright Law, 2019.

²⁵ Section-2(k) of Myanmar Copyright Law, 2019.

For example music or poems are works even if they are not, or even before they are, written down by a musical notation or words.²⁶

Copyright is the exclusive right of the author to copy the literature produced by him and to stop others from doing so. This is a statutory intangible right against copying of defined types of cultural, informational and entertainment productions which may be the creations of authors, playwrights, composers, artists and film directors. It also includes computer programs.²⁷

4.3 Terms of Copyright in Myanmar

Protection for copyright and other related rights will be in force during the lifetime of the author, and until fifty (50) years after the author's death.

Section-17 of Myanmar Copyright Law, 2019 described that even it is not registered by law in respect of the handiwork of copyright (a) protection period for business rights is, as follows-

- (1) 50 years from the year of death besides the period original inventor is alive.
- (2) If it is the copyright of the original related owner, 50 years from the year of his death besides the period last original inventor is alive.
- (3) If it is a handiwork of picture/sound (or) movie, 50 years from the year acted to be enjoyed by the public with the permission of original inventor (or) 50 years from the year created handiwork if not acted like that.
- (4) If it is the handiwork of copyright published without mentioning name, or pseudonym, sub-name, 50 years from the year lawfully acted to be enjoyed by the public. However, if appeared up who original inventor is before the end of that period- period expressed in sub-section (1) and (2).
- (6) If it is applied fine arts, 25 years from the year that handiwork is made.

Section-17 (c) of this law prescribed that in calculating protection period inclusive in Sub-Section(a), it shall be calculated with effect from 1st January of the year combining with the year original inventor passed away, created handiwork, lawfully acted to be enjoyed by the published as first time in a row.

Terms of copyright protection are shown in the table below:

Type of Work	Protection Term	Starting Date
--------------	-----------------	---------------

²⁶ “WIPO Intellectual property Handbook; Policy, law and use,” 2nd edition, 2008, P-40.

²⁷ C L Bansal, Business and corporate law, 2010, P-781.

Literary works	Lifetime of the author (or lifetime of last surviving author if multiple authors) + 50 years	Date work first published
Works published under a pseudonym	50 years	Date work first published / first made available to the public
Audiovisual works	50 years	
Collective works	50 years	
Works of applied art	25 years	Date work was created

Prevention period for associate rights of entertainer, photogram producer and transmission organization is mentioned in chapter-14, section-37, 38, 39, 40 and 41.

4.4 Law Relating to Copyright in Myanmar

In Myanmar, as Myanmar Copyrights Law, 2019 is applicable for the protection of copyright words other related laws are also promulgated. On 28, August, 2015, Broadcasting law was enacted as follows-

According to Section-50 of the Broadcasting Law, 2015, any individual or organization shall not be allowed to own and operate more than one as a business for television and broadcasting services in a broadcasting zone only. But this provision does not concern with the operating television and broadcasting services and distribution process.

Under Section-51 of the Broadcasting Law, 2015, as a television and broadcasting zone, the co-owner of private newspaper service or private television and broadcasting services shall not be permitted more than 30% of another services, if they own 100% in full of stated above one service.

Section-92 of the Broadcasting Law, 2015 state that nobody is granted to operate a television and broadcasting service without issuing the license by the State government.

Nobody is granted to continue its television and broadcasting service after termination of its license until such license is renewed by the State government.²⁸

Section-94, the Broadcasting Law, 2015 stated that any one shall not be violated the provisions of sections-50 and 51 of this Law.

²⁸ Section-93, the Broadcasting Law, 2015

Section-95, the Broadcasting Law, 2015 stated that nobody is granted to continue its television and broadcasting service upon revocation and termination of its license.

Section-96 of the Broadcasting Law, 2015 prescribed that any person who infringes the prohibition as provided in section-92 shall be convicted from minimum 300 Lakhs to maximum 500 Lakhs and seized properties.

Section-97 of the Broadcasting Law, 2015 prescribed that any person who infringes the prohibition as provided in section 93 shall be convicted from minimum 50 Lakhs to maximum 100 Lakhs and seized properties.

According to Section-98, the Broadcasting Law, 2015, any person who infringes the prohibition as stated in section-94 shall be convicted from minimum 100 Lakhs to maximum 300 Lakhs and seized properties.

Any person who violates the prohibition as stated in section-95 shall be omitted from minimum 300 Lakhs to maximum 500 Lakhs and seized properties.

Section-16 of the Printing and Publishing Enterprise Law Bill, 2013 described that nobody shall undertake with printing, publishing and operation the news agency without obtaining the registration certificated.

Section-19 of the Printing and Publishing Enterprise Law Bill, 2013 described that nobody shall undertake with printing, publishing, distributing and operation the news agency within the registration certificated is revoked or restricted for a certain period.

Under Section-20 of the Printing and Publishing Enterprise Law Bill, 2013 if anyone is visibly punished for offending anything inclusive section 16 and 19, he/ she shall be punishable with a fine from 50 Lakhs up to 100 Lakhs. He/ she shall not be paid a fine, this person shall be imprisoned for six months.

According to Section-36 of the Printing and Publishing Enterprise Law Bill, 2013, the government promulgated the Computer Science Development Law in 1996 as SPDC Law No.10/96. One of its objectives is to supervise the import and export of computer software of information. Section-7(g) of the Law relates to Computer Software and Information which are not permitted to be violation of this Section by Section-36 with imprisonment for a term of a minimum 5 years to 10 years and a fine too.

The Television and Video Law which was promulgated on 29 July, 1996 also provides penalties for copyright a video tape for the commercial purpose. Section-33

of this Law states that whoever commits the following act shall, on conviction, be punished with imprisonment for a term which may extent to 3 years or with fine which may extend to kyat 100,000 or with both:

- (a) Distributing, hiring or exhibiting the copied television programme transmitted by the government department or government organization for commercial purpose;
- (b) Copyright, distributing, hiring or exhibiting for commercial purpose or video tape which has already obtained video censor certificate, without the permission of the license holder of video production business or video tape distribution business.²⁹

So, in Myanmar for the protection of intellectual property there are many related laws beyond the Copyright Law.

4.5 Infringement of Copyright in Myanmar

Section-13 of the Myanmar Copyright Law, 2019 provides that works protected under the new Copyright Law will include the following:

- (a) Books, pamphlets, poems, novels, articles, computer programs and other writing;
- (b) Addresses, lectures, speeches, sermons and other oral works;
- (c) Dramatic and dramatic musical works, pantomimes, choreographic works and other oral works;
- (d) Musical works with or without accompanying lyrics;
- (e) Audiovisual works including cinematographic works;
- (f) Works of architecture;
- (g) Works of drawing, sketching, painting, carving, sculpture, engraving, mosaic, works pottery ware, terracotta, jewelry, handicrafts, costumes and indigenous textiles;
- (h) Lithography, weaving, tapestry and other works of fine art;
- (i) Photographic works;
- (j) Textile designs;
- (k) illustrations, maps, plans, sketches and three-dimensional works related to geography, topography, architecture or science; and
- (l) works of traditional cultural expression and expressions of folklore.

²⁹ Myanmar Laws, Office of the Attorney General, 1996 , p-188.

According to Section-73 sub section (a) of the Copyright Law, 2019, the person of rights can apply opening miscellaneous case in copyright court for laying down temporary decree in accord with the prescriptions inclusive in section 74 and 75 under civil law for his loss and tort.

According to Section-73 sub section (a) of the Copyright Law, 2019, in case of a copyright infringement, the copyright inventor may pursue administrative action, civil action and criminal action.

The following are a few examples of copyright infringement cases which have occurred in Myanmar over the year. Note should be made that the majority of the cases, were settled amicably either out of Court or at Lower Court level. There have been only two reported cases at Supreme Court Level, one in 1939 and the other more recently in 1999.

The novel “Gone Myit Thu” written by Daw Dagon Khin Khin Lay was published in 1939. Subsequently Daw Khin Khin Lay filed in Civil Court, a case of copyright infringement against Moe Film Company and U Kyaw Swe for their movie “Pone Pama” claiming that the movie had been based upon her novel without her authorization to do so, and on the same day of filing of the case, Daw Dagon Khin Khin Lay applied for and was granted an injunction against the showing of the movie at the “Royal” and “Ya Da Na Pone” cinema hall.³⁰

Maung Za Ni Ya wrote and published a novel called “Hka Paik Hneik.” Film star, Kyaw Hein made a movie called “Mon Htet Chein Dwin Nay Win Thi” based on the said novel. Maung Za Ni Ya made a complaint of copyright infringement to the Tamwe Township Literary Worker’s Association. The Association in conjunction with the Bahan Township literary Worker’s Association intervened between two parties and the cases was settled amicably out of court.

The dispute over the adaptation, without authorization, of Saya Shwe Oo Daung’s “Yadanabon” novel, into a movie of the same name by the A1 film Company was settled amicably out of court.

Pho Parlay, director of Yangon Films adapted without authorization, Saya Thardu’s novel “Chit San Namuna” into a movie. Saya Thardu filed a case in criminal court of copyright infringement under Section-7 of the old Copyright Act against Daw Khin Ma Ma, owner and Pho Parlay, Director of Yangon films. The case never

³⁰ Journal of the Asia Research Centre, Yangon University, Vol-2, No-1, pp-121-122

reached a higher court. Following the farming of charges, the two parties to terms and the case was amicably settled.

Now, the new Copyright Law described by Copyright Management. Because the user and author live in the same city and some country, many of users have not used to ask the permission of author. If a dispute arise between user and author, the user will give author damages or compensations. And they settle, amicably out of the court. So, concerning with knowledge's of copyright requires to spread throughout Myanmar widely.

4.6 Remedies on Infringement of Copyright in Myanmar

Offenses under the Copyright Law include the unauthorized reproduction, transmission and distribution of copyrighted works, the possession of infringing goods for commercial purposes, the importation of infringing items into Myanmar, and more.

Section-43(a) of Myanmar Copyright Law, 2019 prescribed that on account of the copyright and regarding associated right management-

- (1) Any electronic fact and information shall not be omitted or changed without any consent of the person of rights.
- (2) After omitting or changing under above sub-section(1) the handiwork of copyright or the handiwork of associated rights or other cases prevented under this law, it shall not be published, submitted for publication, transmitted, or transmitted connecting with the public.

Section-43(b) of Myanmar Copyright Law, 2019 described that the facts inclusive in section (b) shall not be concerned with the public policy or any action of the state government granted by law for security.

In respect of the arrangement preventing by technology-

- (a) It shall not be evaded, omitted, destroyed from the arrangement preventing by effective technology.
- (b) Producing the instruments, goods, parts or services made for business paying attention to evade, or to be successful in evasion or to provide from the arrangement preventing by effective technology, importing, distributing, selling, leasing or advertising for lease, or keeping in hand shall not be done.³¹

³¹ Section-44 of Myanmar Copyright Law, 2019

Whoever makes any Law without the consent of the authorized person, except doing for own use and houses use of the respective person, infringes the provisions of this Law

- (1) certified copying, express or implied, copyright materials;
- (2) possessing or selling the thing infringing the copyright;
- (3) importing the thing infringing the copyright into the Union of Myanmar and
- (4) acting any manner which is barred under section-43 and 44 of this Law.³²

According to Section -82, sub-section (b) of this Law, possessing of any mechanism which is applied to produce or reproduce the thing infringing the copyright or related right.

If anyone is punished again for offending that case after he/she was visibly punished for offending anything inclusive in section-82, he/she shall be imprisoned for three years at least or not more than 10 years at most and then, can also be fined not more than Ks.100 lakh.³³

Section-84 of this Law states that if anyone is visibly punished for offending any case mentioned hereunder, he/she shall be imprisonment not more than 1 year, fined not more than Ks.20 lakh or both-

- (a) Issuing in wrong way the registration certificate of copyright or registration certificate of associate rights
- (b) Entering in wrong way in the registration certificate of copyright or registration certificate of associate rights.

In spite of its existence, still no registration facilities for copyright have been established in Myanmar. Nevertheless, registration is non-essential under New Law. Mostly, disputes in respect of copyright and its neighboring rights are settled between parties concerned amicably out of court, sometimes through relevant NGOs such as Writers Federation, Motion Picture Federations, Music Federation, etc. section-54 of the Specific Relief Act also applies to infringement of copyrights.

Myanmar adopted the older Burma Copyright Act and it began into force in on 24thFebruary, 1914 and it contained 4 chapters and 14 sections. Nowadays, the New Myanmar Copyright Law enacted 24thMay, 2019 and it contains 24 chapters and 102

³² Section-82(a) of Myanmar Copyright Law, 2019

³³ Section-83 of Myanmar Copyright Law, 2019

sections. The new Myanmar Copyright Law of this rules were based on the TRIPs Agreement. The amount of fine and punishment had been changed in accordance with the existing currency. In this Law, the offences and punishments were provided in section-82 to 85 in chapter-23.

In the case of U Hla Win and two others Vs. Daw Kyi Kyi @ Daw Yin Wai Lwin, it mentioned in U Than Maung(Sittwe) like that the proceeding of the civil suit of litigation, “U Hla Win and two others Vs. Daw Kyi Kyi @ Daw Yin Wai Lwin”, (the Supreme Court, BLR, 1999, p-208) in this case, there has a dispute between the author and producer, about her written book, “Hmine Wae Chit Thaw Khet Thissa”. The Author has copyright and without her permission, the producer cannot produce like to make film about her book. If she gives permission of document or transformation legally to producer, the producer can make film and can produce. Above mentioned is the judgment of the Supreme Court.

In 1999 Myanmar Law Report (civil) p-208 the brief of the case is that the author Daw Kyi Kyi wrote the novel, “Hmine Wae Chit Te Khet Thissa” and made publication of it in 1981. Then she sold its manuscript to one Daw Khin Than for reproduction of it into Videa feature for the amount of kyat 1,000. Daw Khin Than resold it to the Phowa Video production and also submitted her objection to the Myanmar Film Federation. But the production went on under a slightly changed name of “Hmine Wae Chit Thaw Khet Thissa” and also made some changes to the theme as well as the text of the same. The Divisional Court in exercise of its original civil jurisdiction, decided in favour of the plaintiff (author) and ordered the defendants (Phowa Video Production) to pay kyat 500,000 to the plaintiff as she claimed about for damages to her copyright. The Judge reduced the amount of compensation from kyat 500,000 to 50,000 on the ground of that the amount of damaged should be determined only in consideration of the authors work and on the basis of substantial damages.³⁴

In Myanmar copyright Law, the provisions are based on the TRIPs Agreement and it contains moral rights and economic right. If the copyright owner transfers his economic rights, the moral right will remain with him and the term of copyright protection should be 70 years plus the author’s life because the copyright protection in the world is between 50 years and 100 years.

³⁴ 1999 Myanmar Law Report, p-208

5. CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

Intellectual Property rights make human invents and appears up studiosness and they are therefore the fuel encouraging to progress the whole man-kind. For example movie, musical recording, production and computer software casted millions make many millions of people in the world happy and pleasant. If there is no any rights protection, these works cannot stand. Copyright and associate rights protection is very essential for creation and invention of human.

Copyright Law is a branch of that part of the Intellectual Property Law. Copyright gives the author of an original work exclusive right for a certain time period in relating to that work, including its publication, distribution and adaption, after which time the work is said to enter the public domain. Copyright Law have been standardized to some extent through international convention such as the Berne Convention(1886), TRIPs Agreement (1994), Rome Convention (1961), WIPO Copyright Treaty (1996) and WIPO Performances and Phonograms Treaty (1996). These multilateral treaties have been ratified by nearly all countries and international organization such as European Union or World Trade Organization require their member states to comply with them. Although there are consistencies, among nations intellectual property law, each jurisdiction has separate distinct laws and regulations about copyright. Under International Convention and treaties, the protection of Copyright in each country depends upon their municipal Laws. In the relating about Copyright, term of protection give in each country lasts 50 or 70 years. In most countries, the time of protection for literary work is durable 50 years. For photograph, duration of Copyright will be 25 years. But it differs in different countries.

And then, in Myanmar, Myanmar Copyright Law, 2019 is applicable for the Copyright Protection. Registration of copyright will not be compulsory under the new law. Myanmar Copyright Law, 2019 which is based on TRIPs Agreement was promulgated, the development Copyright Law in Myanmar was become higher than the early previous stages.

Although, Copyright protection is enforced in the World, there are many problem till now. Nowadays, the main problem is that. Internet becomes easier to reproduce the transmission of images, data and sound across and as it becomes more and more difficult to trace the source of unlawful copies, enforcement of existing copyright laws is becoming almost impossible. So all countries in the world should

have the effective copyright law and thus, the author and their original works will outcome more and more. They achieve more by acknowledging writers, artists and inventors, by giving suitable monetary rights and by attracting them with incentive. There shall be better productions. Enterprises and companies will also invest easy and more by making rights exist and making them implement. Mutually, we can enjoy more strange things all over the world in the field of culture, knowledge and entertainment. It makes business and social affairs progress more.

On 24 May 2019, the Republic of the Union of Myanmar passed the Copyright Law (Law No.15/2019). It will come into force after the President of Myanmar issues a notification to that effect. It repeals the Copyright Act, 2019. After that the public have to face difficulties and challenges, so needs to establish a new copyright protection system.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

First of all, I wish to pay my gratitude to Dr.Yi Yi Win, Rector of Co-operative University (Thanlyin), U Oo Tin Thein, Pro-Rector (Admin) of Co-operative University (Thanlyin), and Daw Myint Myint Sein, Pro-Rector (Academic) of Co-operative University (Thanlyin) for allowing me to do the title of “Protection of Copyrights in Myanmar”. Special thanks are also due to Dr. Thi Thi Lwin, Professor & Head of the Law Department of East Yangon University, Chairperson of paper reading seminar. Furthermore, my special thanks to Dr.Theingi Nyo, Professor & Head, Department of Law of Co- operative University (Thanlyin) for her guidance and supervision. Last but not the least I would like to thank my colleagues who have helped me a lot. I humbly extend my thanks to all concerned persons who co-operated with me in this regard.

REFERENCES

- Bryan A. Garner, Black’s Law Dictionary, 3rd edition, 2006
 C L Bansal, Business and corporate law, 2010
 IP Panorama, the most advanced e-learning content on Intellectual Property for Your business developed by WIPO, KIPO and KIPA
 Journal of the Asia Research Centre, Yangon University, Vol-2
 Oxford, Intellectual Property Law, Lionel Bently Brad Sherman, 3rd edition, 2009
 Lionel Bently and Brad Sherman, Intellectual Property Law, 3rd edition, 2009

U Than Maung(Sittwe), Legal Articles on Intellectual Property Rights, 1st edition, 2005-2008

WIPO Intellectual Property (IP) handbook, policy, law and use, 2nd edition, 2008

WIPO, “Summaries of Conventions, Treaties and Agreement Administered by WIPO”, October 2001

WTO, “The legal Texts”, the Results of the Uruguay Round of Multilateral Trade Negotiations, 2002

The Broadcasting Law, 2015

The Printing and Publishing Enterprise Law Bill, 2013

The Myanmar Copyright Law, 2019

The Television and Video Law, 1996

TRIPS Agreement, 1994

WIPO Copyright Treaty(WCT), 1996

Berne Convention, 1886

WIPO Performances and Phonograms Treaty, 1996

Rome Convention, 1961

U Hla Win and two others Vs. Daw Kyi Kyi @ Daw Yin Wai Lwin, the Supreme Court, BLR, 1999, p-208.

En.wikipedia.org/wiki/intellectual property

<https://www.wipo.int/about-ip>

<https://en.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/I...>

<https://stats.oecd.Org/detail>

<https://definitions.uslegal.com/international-copyright/>

[http:// www.google.com/search?hl=en-GB&xs](http://www.google.com/search?hl=en-GB&xs)

[http:// www.businesstimes.com.sg](http://www.businesstimes.com.sg)

[http:// www.lexology.com/library/detail.aspx](http://www.lexology.com/library/detail.aspx).

[www.ccsenet.org/jpl>article>view](http://www.ccsenet.org/jpl/article/view)

www.itu.int/en/ITU-T

The Effect of Microfinance on Living Standards of Poor People: A Case Study of Mingohn Model. Village

Nay Kyar Lin

1.Introduction

Microfinance is a growing industry that has impacted many people all over the world. It is extremely prominent in South Asia, East Asia and Latin America. Microfinance institutions provide an alternative source of credit of poor villagers, who are not able to get bank loans because they don't have collateral to give. Furthermore, microfinance institutions give loans on subsidized interest unlike moneylenders that charge extremely high interest rates.

Microfinance institutions usually target small-scale businesses in the rural and agricultural sectors. If people have the opportunity to work and earn money then they have the capability to provide for themselves. Access to credit is a useful and quick way for the poor to have the means to pay for food and shelter. Poor individuals often lack the basic necessities of life, such as food, shelter, education and healthcare.

Poor people in rural areas often cannot get banking services. Also banks generally do not provide loans because administrative costs are too high. Microfinance provides poor people with a way to build saving and work toward becoming part of a country's official financial system. Several people are credited with being the first to use microfinance as a tool for social improvement. Microfinance helps support financial security because it is not just a donation. The idea behind microfinance is to empower borrowers by helping them build a business which can create income and grow. The specific objective of this study is about the effect of microfinance activities on the poor people in Mingohn village.

Rationale of the Study

Microfinance could provide a lot of positive results on people household's economy such as creating more job opportunities, increasing household incomes, improving household education and family welfare; however, microfinance could also be a heavy responsibility for people too.

When people used financial services, they could increase household income more easily than before, buy more household's assets, and improve their living standards. Especially the group of poor households who have used microfinance to change their daily livelihood by preparing their future plans such as household investment and income, building and fixing their houses, improving family welfare and education.

In Myanmar, the lack of access to credit and savings constrains on the development of the countryside and on the ability of poor households to improve their economic situation. The poor household's traditional source of credit is their informal moneylender who charges interest rates of between 15 to 20 percent per month without collateral, although some form of collateral is required but lower interest rate is charged at 5 to 10 percent per month. Due to lack of financial institutions and unavailability of getting a loan without collateral, the development organizations emphasize financial sustainability of the households. Since the majority of microfinance beneficiaries are female

Scope and limitations of the study

The scope and limitations of the study focused on the households of Mingohn Village, Hlegu Township. The village comprises six wards which are composed of 1153 households. Among of them, there are 905 households who are participating in microfinance institutions. In this study, 282 respondents from 905 households who are participating in microfinance institutions were collected.

Method of the study

Descriptive analysis method and simple random sampling method were applied in the study. Primary data and secondary data are used in this study. Primary data are obtained from the respondents who are participating microfinance institutions in Mingohn village that are collected with structured questionnaires. Secondary data get from reference books, different researchers and library and internet websites. The data analysis are used by multiple regressions. The statistical tool used was the Statistical Package for the Social Sciences (SPSS).

Objective of the study

This study is done with the following objectives;

- (1) To explore the relationship between the living standard and the variables ((micro-saving, loan payment schedule, loan amount sufficient, loan interest rate fair and easiness of getting a loan from MFIs)of the poor people in Mingohn village.
- (2) To assess the effects of the living standard of the poor people in Mingohn village.

Research Questions

In the light of the problem, the research question is developed as follows; what is the effect of microfinance on living standards of the poor people in Mingohn Village?

1. Literature review of the study

Background information and Concept of MFI

Microfinance is the supply of loans, deposit facilities for savings, and other basic financial services to the poor. People living in poverty, like everyone else, need a diverse range of financial instruments to run their businesses, build assets, stabilize consumption, and shield themselves against risks. Financial services provided to the poor include working capital loans, consumer credit, saving, pensions, insurance, and money transfer services. Microfinance emerged in the 1970s as social innovators began to offer financial services to the working poor those who were previously considered un-bankable because of their lack of collateral. Microfinance has become one of the most sustainable and effective tools in the fight against global poverty.

The poor rarely access services through the formal financial sector. They address their needs for financial services through a variety of financial relationships, mostly informal. Credit is available from informal, commercial and non- commercial money- lenders but usually at a very high cost to borrowers.

Financial services for the poor have proved to be a powerful instrument for poverty reduction that enables the poor to build assets, increase incomes, and reduce their vulnerability to economic stress. The traditional banking system requires that a borrower should have collateral to receive a loan. The world's poorest people have no such collateral.

Microfinance institutions exist in many forms; credit unions, and most commercial banks and often, NGOs. Many MFIs use social collateral in the form of peer groups to ensure loan repayment. Borrowers take out loans in groups of five to eight individuals. If a borrower defaults on her loan, the entire group typically is penalized and sometimes barred altogether from taking further loans. This peer pressure encourages borrowers to be very selective about their peer group members and to repay loans in full and on time, resulting in the higher than 95 percent repayment rates industry-wide.

The Grameen Bank Model

The Grameen Bank models emerged from the work of Prof. Muhammad Yunus in Bangladesh in 1976. It focused on the poor and low-income households. The bank operates as a unit set up with a Field Manager and bank workers covering a designated area of about 15 to 22 villages. Manager and workers visit villages in order to familiarize themselves with the environment and identify clientele and explain purpose, functions and mode of operation. Groups of five prospective borrowers are formed from which only two receive a loan in the first instance while others take their turns later. The Group is then observed for a month to see if members are conforming to the rules of the bank. If the two beneficiaries of a loan facility repay principal plus interest over a period of 52 weeks, others become eligible. As it is, there is substantial group pressure to make individual conform to the rules and regulations governing the operations of the bank, particularly with respect to repayment of loans. In the Grameen bank model, group formation is also used for other purposes such as educating the members, awareness building, and collective bargaining. It is also possible to borrow as an individual. This is a direct credit facility to the borrower without formation of groups or generating peer pressure in order to ensure repayment. However, it is always emphasized that the lender should know his customers well enough before loans are granted. There is also the Village Banking. This is community-based credit and savings arrangement which consists of 25-50 low income individuals that seek to improve standard of living through self-employment activities. Initial loan capital may be externally sourced but members run the bank themselves by choosing members, elect officers and establish own by-laws, distribute loans to individuals, collect repayment and savings by

themselves through the officers. Loans are backed by moral collateral and the promise that the group stands behind each loan by way of guarantee.

Adaju (2006) presents very clear cut model of microfinance. This is a model of credit lending position of a “90-between” organization: between lenders and borrowers. Intermediary plays a critical role in generating credit awareness and education among the borrowers including starting savings. In this model, activities are geared towards raising “credit worthiness of the borrowers to a level that is sufficient to attract borrowers”. Links developed by the intermediaries could cover funding, programme links, training, and education and research. These activities can take place at individual, local, regional, national and international levels. A target community can form an association through which various microfinance activities are initiated. The association can be composed of youth only or women only. The association may be a savings group, religious group, political, cultural or professional. The important thing is that the group should have something similar in common in order to foster smooth interrelationship. Credits are usually arranged in such a manner that some members of the association or group take loan facilities in turn such that while some members enjoy loan facilities the other members of the group provides security for the loan by standing as guarantors.

Another method of operation is through bank guarantees. Bank guarantee is used to obtain a loan from a bank and may be arranged externally through donors, government agency or internally that is within members of a savings group. Using guarantee is a credit collateral, loans obtained may be given directly to an individual beneficiary or to a self-formed group. Several international and UN organizations have created international guaranteed funds which banks and NGOs can subscribe to for onward lending or to commence microcredit programmes. The Community Banking methodology treats the whole community as one unit. It establishes semi-formal or formal institutions through which microfinance is dispensed. It is formed by the help of NGOs and other organizations who train community members in various financial activities of the community banks. Often community banks are also part of larger community development programmes which use finance as an inducement for action. However community banking has been phased out in Nigeria giving way to microfinance banks. Quite a significant number of microfinance banks in Nigeria today, transmuted from community banking. Cooperative Associations. These constitute another model of microfinance operation. They are autonomous

associations of persons that are voluntarily united with the desire to meet their common economic, social and cultural needs as well as their aspirations. The model is a jointly owned and democratically, controlled enterprise which treats the whole community as one unit. In some cases financing and savings activities are included in their mandate. Cooperatives are very common in Nigeria.

Finally, there is the Credit Union. This is a unique member driven, self-help financial institution usually organized by and comprised of members of a particular group or organization who agree to save their money together and make loans to members from the savings at reasonable rates of interest. Usually members have common bonds either by virtue of common workplace, labor union or living in the same community. Membership of credit unit is open to all who belong to the group, regardless of race, religion, color or creed. It may be a non-profit financial cooperative.

Definition of Microfinance

‘Microfinance refers to the provision of financial services to low-income poor and very poor self-employed people’ (Otero 2000). According to Robinson (2001), microfinance refers to ‘small-scale financial services—primarily credit and savings—provided to people who farm or fish or herd; who operate small enterprises or microenterprises where goods are produced, recycled, repaired, or sold; who provide services; who work for wages or commissions; who gain income from renting out small amounts of land, vehicles, draft animals, or machinery and tools; and to other individuals and groups at the local levels of developing countries, both rural and urban’. Schreiner and Colombet (2001) define microfinance as ‘the attempt to improve access to small deposits and small loans for poor households neglected by banks’. Oikocredit (2005) regards microfinance to be a wide concept that has microcredit as one component. It also has provision of additional non-credit financial services such as savings, insurance, pensions and payment services, as its other components.

Definition of Microfinance Institutions (MFIs)

A microfinance institutions is an organization, engaged in extending micro credit loans and other financial services to poor borrowers for income generating and self-employment activities. An MFI is usually not a part of the formal banking industry or government. It is usually referred to as a NGO (Non- Government Organization).

Characteristics of microfinance

Microfinance gives access to financial and non- financial services to low-income people, who wish to access money for starting or developing an income generation activity. The individual loans and savings of the poor clients are small. Microfinance as a discipline has created financial products and services that together have enabled low- income people to become clients of a banking intermediary. The characteristics of microfinance products include;

- Little amounts of loans and savings.
- Short-terms loan (usually up to the term of one year).
- Payment schedules attribute frequent installments.
- Installments made up from both principal and interest, which amortized in course of time.
- Higher interest rates on credit.
- Easy entrance to the microfinance intermediary saves the time and money of the clients and permits the intermediary to have a better idea about the client's financial and social status.
- Applications procedures are simple.
- Short processing periods
- The clients who pay on time become eligible for repeat loans with higher amounts.
- The use of tapered interest rates as an incentive to repay on time.
- No collateral is required contrary to formal banking practices.

Difference between commercial bank and microfinance institutions

Which both microfinance institutions as well as commercial banks provide loans, the loans for microfinance institutions are very small and usually do not have any assets to bank them up. The loans for commercial banks are charged high effective rate of interests and they have a considerably higher default rate. Commercial banks provide service to people who usually have been customers easily but microfinance institution provide loans to many previously unknown borrowers. Microfinance institution deal with providing very small amount of loans to small buyers such as farmers or cottage industry workers. **These loans act as the**

bridge loan between the time the crops are sown and they are harvested. The table below reviews the Difference between commercial bank and microfinance institutions.

Table Difference between commercial bank and microfinance institutions

Area	Commercial Bank	Microfinance Institution
Product	Deposit, lending, insurance, demat account, locker facility, and cash withdrawals from ATMs and credit / debit cards.	Deposit, microcredit, insurance
Target group	Urban, rural (both above / below poverty line)	Mainly rural (below poverty line)
Business	Not limited to households and diversified to various sectors	Limited to households
Physical infra	Well defined and targets class banking with value added facilities	Struggle with basic writing, transportation building
Ownership	Banks are owned by government, public and private investor.	Ownership of MFIs lies with the development professionals and social investors who invest in social objectives.
Loan process	Proper scrutiny and monitoring	Lack of proper scrutiny and monitoring leading to high default
Collateral requirement	Collateral required and forfeited in case of default	No collateral required and peer pressure works as collateral
Mechanism of loan disbursal	Loan disbursed in one or more installments	Loan disbursed to individual/ group depending upon savings collected

Recovery of loan	Less cases of default and collateral forfeited in case of default	Large no. of case of default/delinquencies due to poor credit appraisal techniques
Risk management	Bank have advanced risk management systems that are imposed as well as self-deserved. The risk management system is based in data	MFIs have completely different approach to risk management. This is through continuous contacts with the customer and by period retraining of customer and off-field staff. Performance incentives to customer and to field staff are another set of tools for risk management.
Financial goal	Profit maximization	Surplus to sustain
Nature of Institution	Financial Institution	Service Institution
Focus	Profitability, Market Share and All segment of customer	A sustainable credit system for economically disadvantaged people

Source; Priya Chetty, 2017

Overview of microfinance in Myanmar

Poverty reduction is one of the important objectives of developing countries. Microfinance is one type of approach to income generation for low income facilities. It is a powerful for improving the living standards of poor people and their life skills. Credit co-operative societies are the only organization that can really reach the small man. Microfinance institutions exist in many forms. Many microfinance institutions use social collateral in the forms of peer groups to ensure loan repayment. People have become to recognize that credit plays an important role for housewives in poor households to strive for increasing household's income.

Microfinance operations in Myanmar is a pioneering initiative of UNDP. Under the Human Development Initiative (HDI) in Myanmar, microfinance operation was for the time introduced in rural Myanmar in 1997. Since the project has made significant contribution to augmenting small credit needs of the rural poor.

Microfinance Status in Myanmar

Microfinance was first introduced to Myanmar in 1997 by UNDP's Human Development Initiative (HDI), a pilot project that was regulated by a special Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) with authorities were implemented through various International Non- Government Organizations (INGO) such as Grameen Truts, groupe de Recherche's et d'e'change technologiques (GRET) and Private Agencies Collaborating Together (PACT) in the Delta region (Ayeyawady region), the Dry Zone and Shan State. Later on, other INGOs such as WVM and Save the Children also began providing microfinance services as part of their broader poverty alleviation intervention. From March 2006, PACT was selected as the single subcontractor for UNDP microfinance programing, becoming by far dominant microfinance provider I the country. The responsible authority of Myanmar believes that microfinance is an important tool for poverty alleviation.

The microfinance institutions of Myanmar have been implemented the program for a long time without microfinance law. On the other hand, it means that all of microfinance institutions were implemented more than 15 years as the project status without the legal, without microfinance law in Myanmar.

2. Data Analysis and Interpretation

In this chapter provide the empirical findings gleaned from the collected data. It provides demographic information of the respondents and the statistical analysis of the information collected from them, followed by the interpretation and discussion about the findings.

Demographic information of the respondents

With regarding to the demographic characteristics of the respondents. Table shows that 83.7% of the respondents were female and whereas 16.3 % were male. The lion shares of the respondents were women that testify to the fact that most of the beneficiaries of microfinance are female

because the researcher has selected the respondents randomly without any bias toward the gender. There are good reasons to target women by MFI, because gender discrimination is one of the major causes of poverty, slower economic growth, weaker governance and lower standards of living and women are poorer and more disadvantaged than men. However, women contribute decisively to the well-being of their family comparatively more than men.

In the term of age, 9.6 % of the respondents were in the age group of under 20 years.19.1% and 41.8% were in the age groups of 21 to 30 years and 31 to 40 years. 22.3% were in the age groups of 41 to 50 years and remaining 7.1% were 51 years and above.

The respondents also classified in terms of their educational experience.it could affect the way in which they manage and live their daily lives and manage the household and business. From this survey, many of the respondents had secondary education, which represents 45.4% of the respondents, however 21.6% had high educational experiences and only 18.1% had more than primary education. Rest of the 10.6% and 4.3% had university students and graduate of educational experience.

With regard to their numbers of families, the analysis that 31.1% of respondents had less than three members in the family and 56% of respondents had 4 to 6 members. Rest of the 12.8% had more than 6 members.

Table .1 Demographic characteristics of respondents

Variables	Measuring Group	Frequency	Percentage (%)
Gender	Male	46	16.3
	Female	236	83.7
	Total	282	100
Age (year)	Under 20	27	9.6
	21 to 30	54	19.1
	31 to 40	118	41.8
	41 to 50	63	22.3
	51 above	20	7.1

	Total	282	100
Educational level (in year)	Primary level	51	18.1
	Secondary level	128	45.4
	High School	61	21.6
	University students	30	10.6
	Graduate	12	4.3
	Total	282	100
No. of family member	Under 3	88	31.2
	4 to 6	158	56
	6 to above	36	12.8
	Total	282	100

Source: Survey data

Business experience before joining MFI of the respondents

The respondents of the institution were asked if they had their own sources of income or any business activities that helped poor people to generate income and create employment opportunity before joining the MFI. As shown in chart 1, only 36.2% of the respondents had their own business ownership and income sources previously from which they generate income and creating employment opportunity before joining the MFI and rest of 63.8% had no previous business experiences. It indicated that MFI are contributing a lot to start the new small-scale business as well as in the expansion of old business. Therefore we can see that more than 50% of the respondents were part of large families, and at the same time higher proportion of the people did not have any business experience before joining MFI. So indirectly, MFIs were able to reach and benefit more people and enable them to improve their living standards in general.

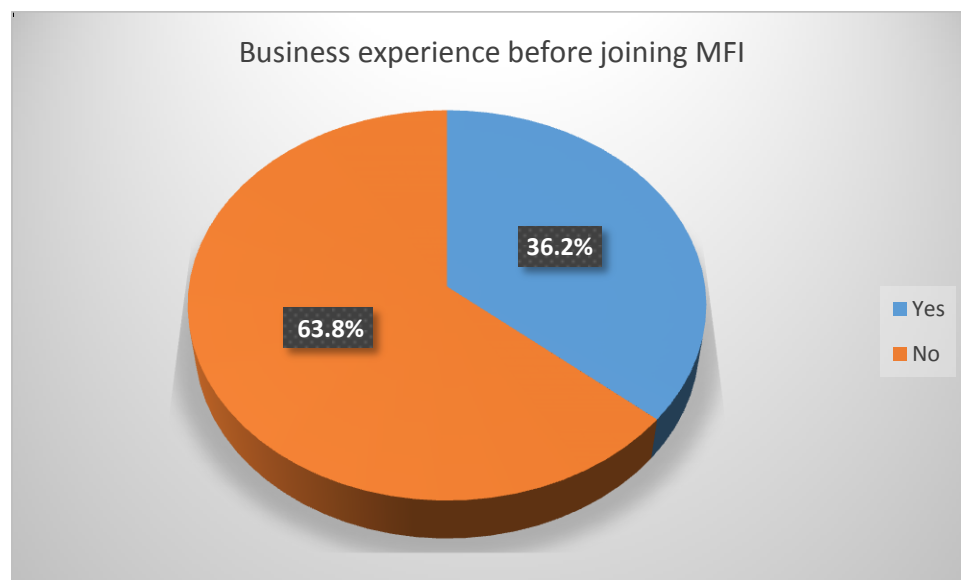
Table- 2 Business experience before joining MFI

Variables	Measuring Group	Frequency	Percentage (%)
Business experience	Yes	102	36.2
	No	180	63.8

before joining MFI	Total	282	100
--------------------	-------	-----	-----

Source: Survey data

Chart: 1 Business experience before joining MFI



Source: Survey data

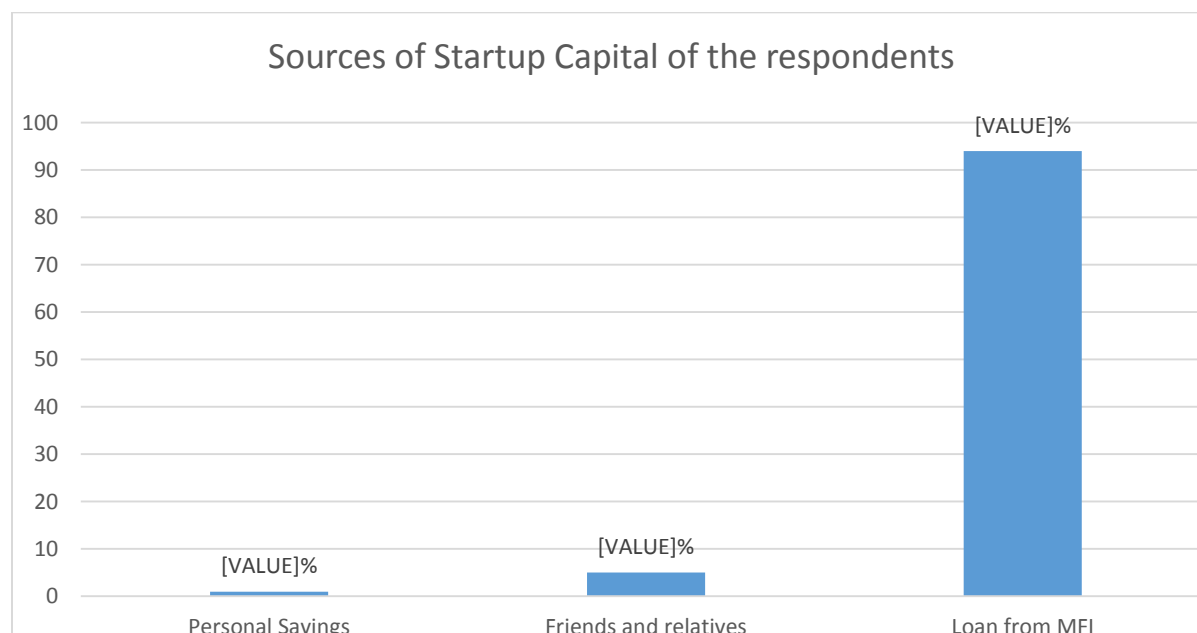
Sources of Startup Capital of the respondents

Table 3 and figure 1, show the sources of start-up capital of the respondents. 94% of total respondents have taken their loan from MFIs. Rest of them have started business from friends and relatives or have either borrowed money from their personal savings. It implies that MFIs is the major source of initial capital and is playing a significant role in helping poor people to start their own business.

Table: 3 Sources of Startup Capital of the respondents

Variables	Measuring groups	frequency	Percentage (%)
Sources of startup capital	Personal Savings	3	1
	Friends and relatives	14	5
	Loan from MFI	265	94
	Total	282	100

Source: Survey data

Figure: 1 Sources of Startup Capital of the respondents

Source: Survey data

Amount of loan taken from MFIs

In the table 4 and figure 2, the researcher analyzed the loans granted to individuals on four different scales, less than 300,000 kyats, 300,001 to 600,000 kyats, 600,001 to 1,000,000 kyats and more than 1,000,001 kyats. Majority of granted loans, around 90% are within 300,001 to 600,000kyats, which implies that MFIs, basically emphasize on micro-credit. Few of respondents also got loan above 600,001 to 1,000,000 kyats, which goes into another criteria of loan offered by MFIs. Indirectly, the result shows that lack of sufficient capital to start- up a medium scale enterprise due to less amount loan offered by MFIs.

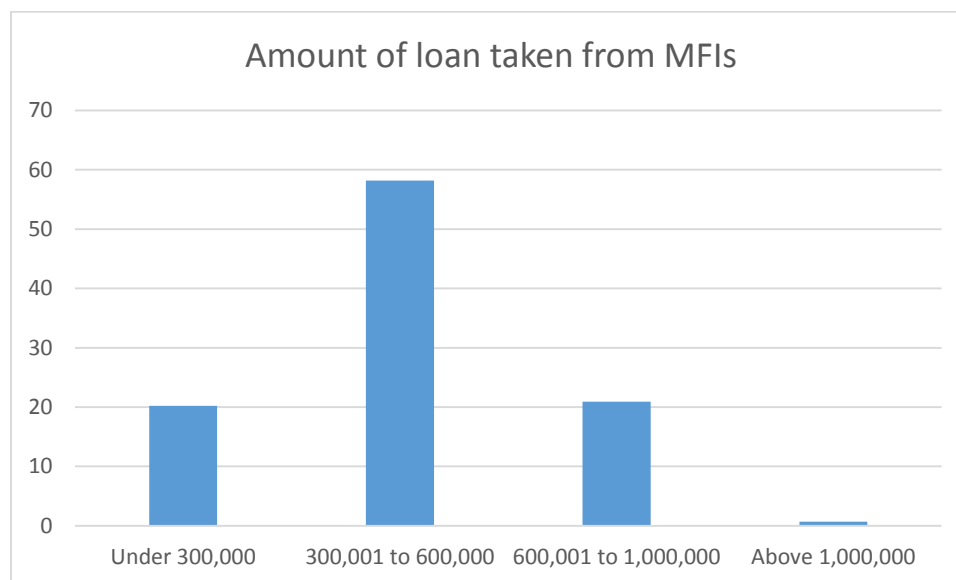
Table: 4 Amount of loan taken from MFIs

Variables	Measuring groups	frequency	Percentage (%)
Amount of loan taken from MFIs (in Kyats)	Under 300,000	57	20.2
	300,001 to 600,000	164	58.2
	600,001 to 1,000,000	59	20.9
	Above 1,000,000	2	0.7

	Total	282	100
--	-------	-----	-----

Source: Survey data

Figure; 2 Amount of loan taken from MFIs



Source: Survey data

Interest rate, procedure of loan taking, loan amount sufficient and loan repayment period

The following table (5) displays reasonability of interest rate of MFIs, procedure of loan taking, loan amount sufficient and loan payment schedules convenient of MFIs. Interest rate of MFIs is reasonable or not, 85.1% of the respondents were reasonable. However, some of the respondents complained that the lending interest rate of MFIs is high as compared to the objective of the institution. Concerning the procedure of obtaining loan from MFIs is easier or not than conventional banking, majority of the respondents (95.7%) reported that the loan taking procedures from MFIs is easier than conventional banking. Regarding the loan period about 49.6% of the respondents have accepted the loan period as satisfactory. On the other hand, about 50.4% of the respondents reported that the loan period is too short. Loan amount of MFIs is sufficient or not, 39.4% of the respondents reported that they received enough amount of loan to meet their demand. However, 60.6% of the respondents complained about the amount of loan provided by MFIs that means the loan were not enough to fulfill their purpose. In general, most of the respondents were not satisfied with financial services delivery of MFIs.

Table; 5 Interest rate, procedure of loan taking, loan amount sufficient and loan repayment period

Variables	Measuring groups	frequency	Percentage (%)
Reasonability of interest rate of MFIs	Yes	240	85.1
	No	42	14.9
	Total	282	100
Procedure of loan taking	Yes	270	95.7
	No	12	4.3
	Total	282	100
Loan amount sufficient of MFIs	Yes	111	39.4
	No	171	60.6
	Total	282	100
Loan payment schedules convenient of MFIs	Yes	140	49.6
	No	142	50.4
	Total	282	100

Source: Survey data

Relationship among the variables

Correlation analysis was conducted to test relationship among the variables and results are presented in Table 6.

Table 6 Results of correlation analysis

		Living Standard	Micro-saving	Loan payment schedule	Loan amount sufficient	Loan interest rate fair	Easiness of getting a loan from MFIs
--	--	-----------------	--------------	-----------------------	------------------------	-------------------------	--------------------------------------

Living Standard	Pearson correlation Sig.(2tailed)	1					
Micro-saving	Pearson correlation Sig.(2tailed)	0.39 0.512	1				
Loan payment schedule	Pearson correlation Sig.(2tailed)	-0.67 0.261	0.44 0.463	1			
Loan amount sufficient	Pearson correlation Sig.(2tailed)	0.354 0.000	0.29 0.630	0.001 0.984	1		
Loan interest rate fair	Pearson correlation Sig.(2tailed)	-0.009 0.886	0.116 0.052	0.044 0.463	0.024 0.694	1	
Easiness of getting a loan from MFIs	Pearson correlation Sig.(2tailed)	0.268 0.000	0.196 0.001	0.029 0.626	0.365 0.000	0.057 0.338	1

**. Correlation is significant at the 0.01 level (2-tailed).

According to the correlation result, the correlation coefficient of awareness about microloans, easiness of getting a loan and loan amount of enough were 0.154, 0.263 and 0.354 respectively and significant at 0.05. Accordingly awareness about microloans, easiness of getting a loan and loan amount of enough are positively correlated with the of living standard of clients. However, as per the test, relationship between loan interest rate, pay schedule, micro-saving and living standards of clients is not statistically significant.

Multiple Regression analysis between Different variables related to living standard

Regression analysis was performed to test the effect of independent variables on the dependent variable. In the table, the descriptive statistics shows that the mean of the variables in the regression analysis. Its results are presented in the Table. The regression reported Adjusted R² squared value 0.15 which confirms the predictive power of the model.

Table 7 Results of regression analysis

	Unstandardized Coefficients		Standardized Coefficients	t	Sig.	Collinearity Statistics	
	B	Std. Error	Beta			Tolerance	VFI
(Constant)	.810	.515		1.573	.117		
Microsaving	.019	.121	0.009	.155	.877	.946	1.057
Loanpaymentschedules convenient	-.126	.080	-.088	-1.571	.117	.956	1.046
Loaninterestratefair	-.029	.060	-.027	-.486	.627	.982	1.018
Loanamountsuffient	.324	.064	.300	5.074	.000	.865	1.156
Level of awareness about the MFI	.140	.060	.134	2.351	.019	.933	1.072
EaisnessofgettingaloanfromMFIs	.161	.076	.129	2.110	.036	.808	1.237

Source: Survey data

3. Conclusion

Microfinance programs extend small loans to poor people aiming at enhancing self-employment projects that generate income to improve the living conditions of the poor and alleviate poverty. Myanmar as part of the developing countries has adopted microfinance programs where many MFIs are delivering the credit services to the poor in order to mitigate the effects of poverty among the poor sections of the society. Thus, the aim of this paper is to explore the effect of microfinance intervention on living standards which microfinance can help the poor out of their poverty situation in Mingohn Village as a case.

The analysis of data using the survey had done, demonstrates that 83.7% respondents of MFIs are women and most of them had secondary education. Most of the women started their business by taking loan from MFIs as compared to other sources.

In addition, the analysis of the data obtained in this study indicates that the procedure of obtaining loans from MFIs is easier than conventional banking. It cannot be requirement of collateral to take the loan from MFIs. The significant portion of the respondents deem the interest rate of MFIs is reasonable despite the fact that the interest rate of MFIs is higher than commercial banking. Yet microfinance is becoming popular day to day among the poor people. There are few reasons. Firstly, all poor people can get loan from MFIs without any collateral. Secondly the loan taking procedure is less complex than that of commercial banks. The correlation coefficient of awareness about microloans, easiness of getting a loan and loan amount of enough are positively correlated with the living standard of clients. However, as per the test, relationship between loan interest rate, pay schedule, micro-saving and living standards of clients is not statistically significant.

To sum up, MFIs operations in Mingohn Village has brought about negative changes in the standards of living of poor people who access their services. Although some of the clients have benefited, most of clients have not benefited negatively. According to the research survey, the findings reveal that the process of application for loans starts with small amount and after repayment the clients can apply for next higher amount.

Recommendations

The study recommends that the MFIs should consider the possibility of increasing the grace period and reducing the frequency of repayment so as to provide for clients with long term to business. MFIs should restructure their training contents to include improving their client's business skills. Proper training should be to enhance the quality of production and quick supply. They should regular business training for their clients and qualified training institutions should conduct this. A sufficient amount of money should be available in the MFIs for providing loans to users. Repayment of installment amount once in every week should be reviewed by MFIs.

Acknowledgements

First of all, I would like to express my gratitude to Dr.Yi Yi Win (Rector) and Pro Rector U Oo Tin Thein(Pro-Rector), Co-operative University, Thanlyin for their kind permission to conduct this research work. Secondly, I special thanks to Daw Khin Aye Mar, Professor and Head of the Department of Co-operative Studies, for her kind encouragement in doing this paper.And then I want to say thank my students and my colleague from Department of Co-operative Studies who helped me in every aspect. Moreover thank you very much for all round helping in my research.

ANALYSIS ON CONTRIBUTION OF GARMENT INDUSTRIES AND FEMALE WORKERS EMPOWERMENT:

A CASE OF CKJ MYANMAR CO, LTD., THANLYIN

Khaing Khaing Moe

Abstract

Women empowerment is a force for economic development of the country .It is also a part of sustainable development goal. The objective of the study is to identify the demographic condition of female workers and to examine the contribution of CKJ Myanmar garment industry to female workers empowerment at household level. The sample size of the study was 154 female workers from CKJ Myanmar and simple random sampling method was used. The multiple regression model was used to test the relationship of dependent variable and independent variables. According to the answers of respondents, most of respondents are between 20 years and 25 years old. Female workers who finished secondary level and the number of single respondents are the most. According to native, most of the respondents live in Yangon region. It is found that over 65% of respondents have empowerment in their life. The study shows that access to resources, ownership of assets, coping capacity household shocks have significant impact on women empowerment according to the regression analysis of the data. The contribution of garment industry can improve the female workers empowerment. Therefore, the study recommend that the garment industry employers should provide training female employees to adapt to new technology, giving rewards both a word and money to bring motivation. The policy makers and civil societies should provide many vocational training centers that offer sewing operators courses in line with international labor standard. Moreover, government should provide to develop the garment industries with good policy and plans.

Key words: Contribution of Garment industry, women empowerment

1. INTRODUCTION

The pace of development in every country mainly depends on the citizen's participation including women. Over half of the total population of country is women .The female forces are included a vital role in carried out to be a developed country. The role of women also correlates with children survival and education levels which are indicators for country development. Previously, women normally are responsible for home care work such as cooking, caring for child, fetching water and cleaning .Later, changing social norms and pattern, economic systems get women more economic opportunities. Due to feminization of labor in the factories and services, more women are entering to the private sector, contributing a significant labor force. According to the world employment and outlook, global women's labor force participation rate is 48.5 percent in 2018. In Myanmar, female labor force rate is 47.7% of total labor force.

According to the UN report, providing women and girl with equal access to education, health care, decent work and representation in political and economic decision making process will nurture sustainable economies and benefit societies and humanity at large. Governments create employment and job opportunities for girl and women: this is a means to reduce poverty and get empowerment .Women participate only in agricultural sector, they take also in industries sector and services sector. Women hold the key to unlocking Myanmar's current and future growth .The hundreds of thousands of women in the country's garment industry are making an essential contribution to the country's development , according to a new report issued by the ILO in Myanmar.

The garment industry is an important engine for Myanmar's sustainable development. Garment and textile industry is also the one to get job opportunities for workers who cannot finish the basic education as well as to bring foreign exchange for the country. The majority of workers in garment are women. By women more get income, more support to their family and enhance participation in decision making in household level. As women's access to wage employment improves, their contributions to the household and their negotiations improve and their bargaining and eventual participation in household decision-making also improve (Schncebaum and Mades ,2013). There are relationship between women empowerment and their career job. Thus this study examines the contribution of CKJ Myanmar garment industry and female workers empowerment.

1.1 Objective of the study

The main objective of the study is to identify the demographic condition of female workers and to examine the contribution of CKJ Myanmar garment industry to female workers empowerment at household level.

1.2 Methodology

It is an exploratory research .The descriptive survey method is used in this study .The primary data and secondary data were used. Secondary data were obtained from previous research journals, Myanmar Time journals. A survey method was used with structured questionnaire for collection of primary data. By using simple random sampling technique, 154 female workers of CKJ Myanmar Co.Ltd were collected .This research focuses cross sectional data on empowerment of female workers 2018-2019 budget years. Dependent variable in this study is female workers empowerment and independent variables are contribution of garment industry like financial contribution, access to resources, ownership of

assets, perception of gender awareness and coping capacity to household shocks. The multiple regression model was used to test the relationship of dependent variable and independent variables. The basic model for the study was as follows:

$$Y = \alpha + \beta_1 X_1 + \beta_2 X_2 + \beta_3 X_3 + \beta_4 X_4 + \beta_5 X_5 + e$$

Where, Y=Female workers empowerment

X1= Financial Contribution

X2=Access to Resources

X3= Ownership of Assets

X4= Perception of Gender Awareness

X5= Coping Capacity to Household Shocks

And α is constant and $\beta_1, \beta_2, \beta_3, \beta_4, \beta_5$ are coefficients to estimate, and e is the error term.

1.3 Scope and limitation of the study

This study focuses on contribution of garment industry to female workers empowerment. There is population about 601 workers including 514 female workers in CKJ Myanmar garment industry. According to proportion method, it was surveyed 154 female workers. Furthermore, the limitation of the study is that it cannot cover the women from other area.

2. THE CONCEPT OF EMPOWERMENT

Empowerment is a complex concept, which varies between cultures, persons, sexes, occupations and position in life. It may also vary in time and geographically (between North and South, between continents, between regions, between countries and between rural and urban areas). Furthermore, men and women may have a different view on empowerment in general and women's empowerment in particular. The concept of empowerment has been considered from social aspect by many authors (Schuler 1986; Malhotra 2002; Saraswathy 2008).

According to Wikipedia, the term originated in community psychology, it refers to measures designed to increase the degree of autonomy and self-determination in people and in communities in order to enable them to represent their interests in a responsible and self-determined way, acting on their authority. In the management literature, empowerment is an approach to influence employee behavior-it means to provide employees with resources, knowledge, and decision-making power so they can take decisions that improve business performance.

The UN definition empowerment means that people, individuals have a voice in making decision for themselves and for society. Empowerment is supporting people in such a way as to enable them to accomplish goals that will improve life for all. World Bank's

definition that empowerment is the process of enhancing the capacity of individuals or groups to make choices and transform those choices into desired actions and outcomes.

Kabeer (1994) assumed that “The expansion in people’s ability to make strategic life choices in a context where this ability was previously denied to them”. Brody et al.(2015) defined four type of empowerment :economic empowerment –the ability of women to access ,own ,and control resources, political empowerment-the ability to participate in decision making focused on access to resources, rights, and entitlements within communities .It includes legal rights as well as outcomes such as political participation .Social empowerment –the ability to exert control over noneconomic decision making within the household ,and psychology empowerment –the ability to make choices and act on them.

2.1 Women Empowerment

There are several principles defining women’s empowerment such as, for one to be empowered, they must come from a position disempowerment. Furthermore, one must acquire empowerment themselves rather than have it given to them by an external party. According to Wikipedia, women empowerment is the way or social action in which women elaborate and recreate what it is to be in a circumstance that they previously were denied. Women’s empowerment can be defined as controlling the key aspects of their lives (Kishor’s1997). It is very difficult to define control in one term because it has different meaning such as control explained in relation to resources, earnings and expenditure. Some other sees control as a self-reliance means self-dependency and some other sees decision making authority is a true indicator of control. Last but not the least some people believe that freedom to choice the life partner is also an indicator of controlling.

Schuler and Hashemi (1994) and Kumar and Paul (2007) all say that women’s role in decision making process is an important factor and needs to be considered for woman empowerment. Some of researchers consider women empowerment as autonomy .Women must be agents rather than only recipients of change. It is also considered as empowerment and is reflected in a person’s capability set, (Sen 1993; Bennett 2002; Narayan 2002)”.

United Nations Population Information Network (1990) defines as women’ sense of self-worth; their right to have and to determine choice; their right to have access to opportunities and resources; their right to have the power to control their own lives, both within and outside the home; and their ability to influence the direction of social change to create a more just social and economic order, nationally and internationally.

2.2 Measuring of Women Empowerment

Sathar and Kazi (1997), connect both access and control with having a say in decisions related to particular household resources. They measured two things such as access to resources which is reflected on whether women participates in household expenses decisions and women can freely buy clothes, jewelry, and gifts for their relatives and control over resources is calculated by knowing who kept household earnings and who has the authority in household expenditure. Jejeebhoy's (1997) analysis resources are related to the concepts of access, control and decision-making, where control sometimes referring to ownership and decision-making.

Here are some decision-making indicators which vary country to country. In Egypt, decision making power is measured on the basis of the decisions of food cooked, visit, children's education, household budget, children's health, use of family planning methods (Kishor.1997). Women's participation in household decision making is a widely accepted measure to indicate women's household level empowerment, particularly in demographic and health related studies.(New York: Oxford University Press ,2000).

Six indicators of women's empowerment are contribution to household income, access to resources, ownership to assets, participation in household decision making, perception on gender awareness and coping capacity to household shocks (Shahnaj Parveenand Ingrid-Ute Leonhauser 2004). Financial contribution includes both farm activities and nonfarm activities .Access to resources narrates the right, scope, power or permission to use and get benefits from household resources and social resources. The third indicators of women empowerment is ownership of assets (productive and non-productive) which means women have the capability to control their own assets and enjoy profits and advantages occurring form them. Participation in household decision making is the fourth factor which actually shows the women's participation in decision making process and also implementing the decision in different family social matters. The fifth factor is the gender awareness which denotes the women consciousness about gender inequality and unfairness in the society. The sixth and the last indicator of women empowerment is the coping capacity to household shocks which means women's risk taking ability and crisis management capacity.

2.3 Importance of Garment

The garment industry is labor-intensive, export-oriented, and uses standardized technology. The industry is a global one: supply and value chains are spread across many countries and continents. It is suggested that textiles and clothing industries are important in economic and social terms, in the short-run by providing incomes, jobs, empowerment, especially for women and foreign currency receipts and in the long-run by providing countries the opportunity for sustained economic development in those countries with appropriate policies and institutions to enhance the dynamic effects of textiles and clothing.

Garment industry affects growth in developing countries. It is a major contributor to income and the dominant export in certain countries. The employment effects are also significant. The textile and apparel industries are important socially as well as economically. They are essential in breaking the cycle of poverty by offering a path out of an informal sector characterized by underemployment, low education, subsistence wages, and discrimination. The clothing sector has been a major example where developing countries have been able to significantly increase and diversify exports with positive effects on income, employment, poverty and empowerment.

Textile and garment industry is referred to in the most recent National Poverty reduction Strategy (NPRS) for the developing countries and highly dependent textile and garment exporter such as Bangladesh : Cambodia : Pakistan: Laos PDR, etc. The industry has contributed to export earnings, foreign exchange earnings, employment creation, poverty alleviation and empowerment of women. The industrial development has been not only a major contributor to economic growth but also long-run poverty reduction by creating employment and increasing the productivity. The garment and textile industries sector play an important role as which has social and economic impact on country development.

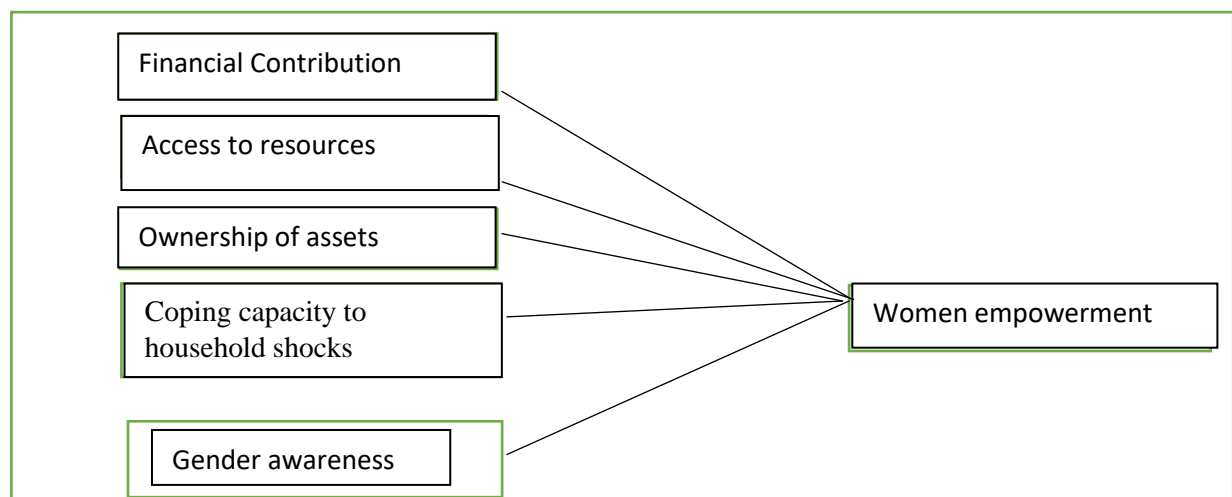
Garment and textile industry is the one for the workforce in Myanmar to fetch high incomes, to get job opportunities for workers who cannot finish the basic education, being a sector which can train occupational skills needed, in a short period of time. Had it successfully been implemented, it would be a potential sector which would create jobs enough not only for those who had to work in neighboring countries such as Thailand and Malaysia but also for local citizens. Just by managing to bring about strengthened policies, reasonable wages and fringe benefits, and necessary finding markets and starting capital for investment as for the governments, it is a sector which can develop rapidly in a short period of time.

Workers who make up 90 percent of the garment sector's workforce are women. The typical garment worker is female and on average 24 years old, works six days a week and 13 hours per day, and earns based on 4800 per day ,according to a report by the Labor Rights Clinic .The hundreds of thousands of women active in the country's garment industry are making an essential contribution to the country's development efforts.

2.4 Conceptual Framework of the Study

The primary purpose of the research is to examine the empowerment of female workers and contribution of garment industry. According to literature and previous studies, there are many factors affecting the women empowerment. However, in this study, it is assumed that female worker empowerment is crucial affected by contribution of garment industry where women get income job such as contribution to family expenditure ,access to resources , ownership of assets, coping capacity household shocks and gender awareness .Figure 1 Show the conceptual framework for the current study. The data was analyzed by using Statistical Package for Social Science (SPSS version 23).

Figure 2.1 Conceptual Framework for the Current Study

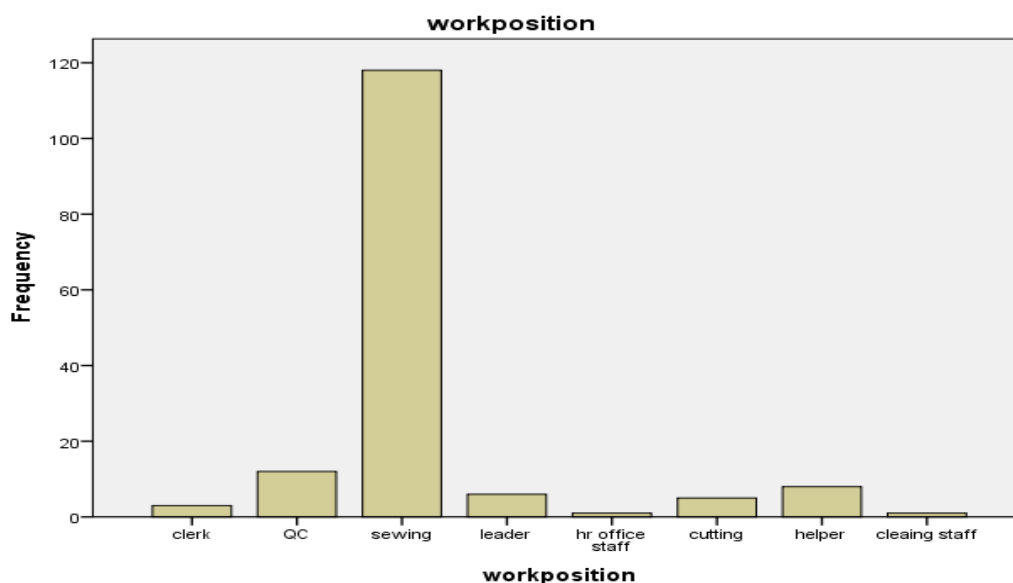


Source : Adapted from literature

3. DEMOGRAPHIC FACTORS OF THE FEMALE WORKERS

The research paper is studied on the contribution of garment industry to women empowerment .Data collection was only made to female workers and questionnaires were used and made personnel interviews with different levels of female workers at CKJ Myanmar garment Co,Ltd, which is located in 27,Sike Pyoe Yay Street ,Ah HmuHtan Ward ,Thanlyin township, Yangon. Simple random sampling method was used to collect the data of female employees from CKJ Myanmar garment industry .The role of female employees in garment factory is very significant and they are essentials in each level of working group .The status of working group is helpers, operators admin-workers/office staff, quality inspector and folder and finisher and ironing. Sewing female workers are 118, the big numbers in the respondents. The rest position shows in the figure.

Figure (3.1)



Source: Survey (August 2019)

Majority of the women working in the factory are originally from Yangon region .Some of them migrated from rural to Yangon region to seek for a better living condition in the cities and some to find for a job which can contribute family income alternatively .There are some women working in the factory from other part of the country such as Bago , Shane State and Magway region. There would be a reason that women get empower since they enter workforce for economic reason only. Majority of the population over three fourth of the working women are single and the rest are married and widow women. There could be so

much responsibilities as well as more influence on their family for these married women workers who had to combine home chores and other activities with their work. According to the table, single is the most 81.8%, married and widow are 16.2% , 1.9% respectively.

Table (3.1) Marital Status of Female Workers in CKJ Myanmar Garment Industry

	Percentage
Single	81.8
Married	16.2
Widow	1.9

Source: Survey (August 2019)

Working women in the factory have at least primary school .Majority of the women working in the factory are middle school level with 58.4percent, followed by high school level 27.9percent, under graduate level 1.9percent and graduate level 6.5percent respectively. Most of the women who passed middle school are women who are working in the assembly line such as cutting, sewing, sewing helper. There are some women working in leading role such as leader, QC. Those women can enter to the leadership role due to their working experiences and expertise in their profession although they could not access to higher level education. The position such as clerk, HR office staffs need higher level education especially a specific degree for this specific type of job. Most type of jobs in the factory do not depend on the education level of the people especially a degree level education. The table show that the percentage of women education level.

Table (3.2) Education Level of Female Workers in CKJ Myanmar Garment Industry

Education Level	Percent
Graduate level	6.5
Under graduate level	1.9
Higher level	27.9
Middle level	58.4
Primary level	5.2

Source: Survey (August 2019)

3.2 Women Empowerment

Women empowerment , being depends on complex sociological and economic issues. Women empowerment need to be measured in term of financial liberty, ability to take decision ,health condition of the women and ability to stand up in the society .In this research, female workers were asked the questions regarding making a decisions in order to reflect the empowerment .

Table (3.3) Women Empowerment

Sr. No	Items	Frequency	Percentage
1.	I make a decision whether I give my salary to family	150	97%
2.	I freely choose whether I work current job	147	96%
3.	I can participate a making decision concern with household expenditure	138	90%
4.	I can choose what my family investment do	108	70%
5.	I choose myself taking a medicine and going to the clinic	149	97%

Source: Survey (August 2019)

According to the table, 150 respondents (97%) agreed that they freely make a decision whether they give their salary to family, 147 respondents (95%) agreed that they choice whether they work current job, 108 respondents (70%) agreed that they can participate a making decision concern with household expenditure, 138 respondents (90%) agreed that they can choice what family investment do , 149 respondents (97%) agreed that they choice themselves taking a medicine and going to the clinic. This may explain that over 65% of total respondents from CKJ Myanmar have great empowerment in their life.

3.3 Financial Contribution to Family Expenditure

As women participate economic sector, they can contribute their income to family. Each women earns based on their position .It is not the same that working women can give incomes to their family. Women can pay money to their households as much as they may be an essential in their family. In this study, female workers are asked whether they can contribute to their family expenditures.

Table (3.4) Financial Contribution to Family Expenditure

Sr. No	Family expenditure	Frequency	Percentage
1.	0% - 20 %	7	5%
2.	20% - 40%	32	21%
3.	40% - 60%	68	44%
4.	60% - 80%	42	27%
5.	80% - 100%	5	3%

Source: Survey (August 2019)

According to the survey, five of respondents can support 80% to 100% of family expenditures. Sixty eight of respondents answer providing between 60% and 80% of their family expenditures, 42 of answerable women are supporters 40% to 60% of family living costs. The rest of 39 respondents give 0% to 40% of their family expenditures respectively.

3.4 Access to Resources

If women get empowerment in their life, they need skills, knowledge, work experiences and social network as a factor. Women are able to receive the resource such as work experience, skills, friends, knowledge by participation in labor force. Female workers in CKJ Myanmar Co,Ltd were asked whether they get resources from their job environment. According to the result, 138respondents (90%) agreed that they get skills because they enter the garment industry, 122 respondents (79%) agreed that they receive job information from their work environment, 118respondents (77%) agreed that social network is increase as they join garment industry.

Table (3.4) Access to Resources

Sr. No	Items	Frequency	percentage
1.	I get skills because I enter the garment industry	138	90%
2.	I receive job information from my work environment	122	79%
3.	Social network is increase as they join garment industry	118	77%

Source: Survey (August 2019)

3.5 Ownership of Assets

Ownership makes women powerful and empowerment in life. As women work income job, they get great purchasing power and ownership. Working women in garment industry were asked regarding ownership of assets. According to the table (3.4), 140 responds (91%) agreed that they can buy more things after they get a job, 132 respondents (86%) agreed that they have big property as they do in the job, 128 respondents (83%) agreed that they can freely enjoy what they buy from my income, 74 respondents (74%) agreed that they are able to sell what I buy as their wishes.

Table (3.5) Ownership of Assets

Sr. No	Items	Frequency	Percentage
1.	I can buy more things after I get a job.	140	91%
2.	I have big property as I do the income job.	132	86%
3.	I can freely enjoy what I buy from my income.	128	83%
4.	I am able to sell what I buy as my wishes.	114	74%

Source: Survey (August 2019)

3.6 Coping Capacity to Households Shocks

Working women have a responsibility not only work duty but also family affairs. When Women become female workers, they get powerful to tackle family unexpected problems. Women empowerment concern with the ability solution their family shocks such as illness, unemployment. Regarding household shocks solution, female workers were asked. According to the table(3.6), 15 respondents coping capacity to family shocks are between 0% and 20%, 31 respondents coping capacity are between 20% and 40%, 2 respondents capacity for solving household shocks are between 80% and 100% . The most respondents 76 are able to tackle 40% to 60% of the family crisis and 30 respondents can solve 60% to 80% of family problem.

Table (3.6) Coping Capacity to Households Shocks

Sr. No	Coping capacity to shocks	Frequency	percentage
1	0% -20 % of house shocks	15	10%
2.	20% -40% of house shocks	31	25%
3.	40-60% of house shocks	76	49%
4	60%-80% of house shocks	30	25%
5.	80%-100% of house shocks	2	1.3%

Source: Survey (August 2019)

3.7 Perception on Gender Awareness

Perception on gender awareness refers to a woman's ability to express her opinion with regard to existing inequality and discrimination against women in the society. Regarding gender awareness, 128 respondents (83%) assume that there are no gender inequality in their work environment, 142 respondents (92%) say that they have never been gender inequality in work time, 12 respondents (8%) agreed that there should pay salary base on discrimination gender.

Table (3.7) Perception on Gender Awareness

Sr. No	Items	Frequency	Percentage
1.	There is no gender inequality in the work environment	128	83%
2.	I have never experienced gender inequality in work time	142	92%
3.	There should be pay salary base on discrimination gender	12	8%

Source: Survey (August 2019)

3.8 Analysis of Correlation Coefficient of the Study

Correlation analysis is a statistical procedure that examines the strength of a linear relationship between two variables. In this study, establishing the relationship among the six variables namely, women empowerment, financial contribution to family expenditure, access to resources, ownership of assets, perception of gender awareness and coping capacity household shocks in order to measure the degree of linear association, correlation analysis is used. As the probability is lower than the 0.01 and 0.05 level, the correlation coefficient is statistically significant. Table (3.8) provides the result of the analysis. These results indicate that there is a positive linear inter-factor association between six variables. So, these findings indicate that female workers of CKJ Myanmar are able to contribute greatly to family expenditure, more resources and ownership and greatly coping capacity to family shocks, they get positive effect on empowerment.

Table (3.8) Correlation Matrix Summary

	Women empowerment	Financial contribution	Access to resources	Ownership of assets	Coping capacity household shocks	Perception of gender awareness
Women empowerment	1					
Financial contribution	.313	1				
Access to resources	.477	.243	1			
Ownership of assets	.233	.007	.116	1		
Coping capacity household shocks	.392	.399	.267	.019	1	
Perception of gender awareness	-.116	-.122	-.097	.138	-.055	1

3.9 Analysis on Contribution of Garment Industry and Female Workers Empowerment

Multiple regression analysis was conducted to analyze the effect of the independent variables on dependent variable. According to the table (3.9), there was a fair correlation between female workers empowerment and financial contribution to family expenditure, access to resources, ownership of assets, gender awareness and coping capacity to household shocks, R value of .597 is significant at 0.05 level. R square is 0.356. Thus 35 percent of the

variable in female workers empowerment can be explained by the independent variables of the current model.

According to coefficient analysis, there are five significant variables in proposed regression model. They are access to resources, ownership of assets, coping capacity to household shocks with .000, .003, and .001 at significant level 0.05. In order to the calculated significant value, access to resources, ownership of asset, coping capacity to household shocks impact on female workers empowerment.

Table(3.9) Multiple Regression Analysis on the Effect of Contribution of Garment Industry to Female Workers Empowerment

Model	Unstandardized Coefficients		Standardized Coefficients	t	Sig.
	B	Std. Error	Beta		
(Constant)	.494	.052		9.469	.000
financial contribution	.011	.006	.123	1.685	.094
access to resources	.175	.035	.351	5.019	.000
access to ownership	.117	.040	.200	2.974	.003
coping capacity to house shocks	.020	.006	.241	3.284	.001
gender awareness	-.046	.038	-.081	-1.205	.230

Model	R	R Square	Adjusted R Square	Std.Error of the Estimate	Durbin-Waston
1	.597	.356	.335	.1107303886	1.805

4. CONCLUSION

4.1 Finding and Discussion

Garment industries sector provide employment as well as GDP growth of the country. Most of work position in garment industries offer women jobs. As women participate in economic activities, they get increase the overall status of women and as well as make them empowered. Women empowerment is a force for economic development of the country and be a part of sustainable development goal .Thus many researchers explore the important of garment industries sector. In this study examines the contribution of CKJ Myanmar garment industry to female workers empowerment. The sample size of the study is 154 female workers from CKJ Myanmar and simple random sampling method was used. Regarding work position, most of the respondents are sewing. According to age level, most of respondents are between 20 years and 25 years old. Regarding education level, female workers who finished secondary level are the most. Concerning with marital status, the number of single respondents are great. According to native, most of the respondents are Yangon region

Before the study was analyzed the contribution of garment industry and female workers empowerment, the study was analyzed the empowerment conditions of female workers at household level as possible as complete. According to the answers of respondents, it is found that over 65% of respondents have empowerment in their life. They possess the self-worth, confidence, self-dependent and freedom to choose what they may with regard to their private and professional choice alike.

Then , the study was examined the contribution of garment industry such as contribution to family expenditure ,access to resources , ownership of assets, coping capacity household shocks and gender awareness, and female workers empowerment as independent and dependent variables. According to the correlation between the variables, it is founded that there is positive correlation between dependent variable and independent variables, except gender awareness independent variable. The study suggests that access to resources, ownership of assets, coping capacity household shocks have significant impact on women empowerment according to the regression analysis of the data. The result of the current study is consistent with previous studies articles, regarding the contribution of garment industry impacts on empowerment.

Garment industry provides to females who cannot finish middle school education the opportunities that can participate in formal employment. After those women join the garment industry, they get not only salaries but also skills, job experiences, job knowledge, friends, job opportunities and etc. Such resources being large in female workers make empowerment

of women increase. Female whose earn from self-force reduces dependent on others. Garment female workers become fulfilled their needs and rise ownership after they get a job. The addition of female workers' ownership is a factor that effects on their empowerment to be high.

According to their income level, garment female workers come share their family economic responsibilities. When women become female workers, they get powerful to tackle family unexpected problems. Female workers able to solve the family shocks such as illness, unemployment make them effect on their empowerment.

It is concluded that the more female workers have great access to resources, ownership of assets, coping capacity household shocks through contribution of garment industry, the more they get empowerment in their life .As female workers are being a parent for children, the garment industry have greatly effect on the education and health of the female workers' children. Additionally, the increasing garment industry and women empowerment reduce the poverty rate of the country and develop the country.

4.2 Recommendation

The research study the contribution of garment industry to female workers empowerment. The contribution of garment industry is determined as the key factors to increase the female workers empowerment. According to the study, the contribution of garment industry impacts on female workers empowerment at household level. Thus it is need to open more garment industries for getting high empowerment to female workers.

The garment industry employer should provide training female employees to adapt to new technology that improves production operation in a changing garment market. Such training courses help female workers enhance their careers growth and update new products for competitiveness. Employer should pay female employees rewards both a word and money to bring motivation that is eagerly willingness to do. As a result, female workers become happy and stable in the workplace. In addition, garment industry owner should manage a favorable working environment. Safe and healthy working conditions are paramount to creating better workplaces. Offering sufficient medical services, clean water and workspaces that protect employees against hazards are key to enhancing productivity and also increase female workers capabilities.

The policy makers and civil societies should provide many vocational training centers that offer sewing operators courses in line with international labor standard. If the female workers

become more skilled labors, they can make more choice, self –independent in their life. Also government should provide to develop the garment industries which support empowerment of female workers by solving the electricity problem, which are still frequent in the country and the lack of an efficient transportation system. In addition the government should support good policy and plans to develop in garment industries sector.

According to the result, the contribution of garment industry increase the female workers empowerment at household level .Increasing in female workers empowerment get advantage to their family members and themselves as well as reduce poverty rate of the country .This study is useful to policy makers ,employers. This research guides to young women who have not yet participate in economic as doing income job improve empowerment. This research suggest policy makers that supporting garment industries sector to be sustainable development is a way to reduce the poverty rate of the country and to get more empowerment of women. This study examines whether the contribution of garment industry to women empowerment as a case of CKJ Myanmar Co, Ltd., Thus ,the study suggest that further research should conduct this issue in other institution and sector with big sample size .

Acknowledgement

Firstly, I would like to express my gratitude to our Rector Dr Yi Yi Win for her encouragement to write this research paper. Secondly, I am grateful to Daw Khin Aye Mar, Profession and Head of Department of Co-operative Studies for her various kinds of support and guidance. I wish to express my special thanks all of respondents from CKJ Myanmar Co,Ltd. Last but not least, I heartily thank to my colleagues, especially, for their kindness, ideas and contribution of the completion of this paper.

References

- Aliya Bushra, NasraWajiha(2014) , “Assessing the Socio-Economic Determinants of Women Empowerment in Pakistan”, *Global Conference on Contemporary Issues in Education GLOBE-EDU 2014,12-14July,Las Vegas ,USA*.
- Brody, Carinne, Thomas De Hoop, Martina Vojtkova, Ruby Warnock,Megan Dunbar,PadminiMurthy,Shari L. Dworkin, and Carinne Brody.2015. “*Economic Self-Help Group Programs for Improving Womens*.Campbell Systematic Review 19,Journal.
- Debanjan Das (2016), “*Development of Women Empowerment Index for the Indian Apparel Industry*”,Dissertation, The University of Missours.
- Kabeer, Naila.2012. “*Women’s Economic Empowerment and Inclusive Growth: Labor Markets and Enterprise Development*”. International Development Research Centre.
- Lousise Fox Caroline Roero (2017), “In the mind, the household, or the market? Concept and Measurement of Women’s Economic Empowerment”, Policy Research Working Paper, Social Protection and Labor Global Practice Group .
- M. M, Kritz, P. Makinwa-Adebusoye, and D.T. Gurak , “*The role of gender context in shaping reproductive behavior in Nigeria*”, in B.Harriet, & G .S . “*Presser Women’s empowerment and demographic processes*”,(New York : Oxford University Press, 2000)
- Mohammed MasumBillah, Md. Rafiul Islam Manik (2017). *Ready Made Garment s’* (RGM) Coousise Fox Carolina Roero (2017), “Contribution in Women Empowerment: A Study on Bangladesh Perspective”, *Article in European Scientific Journal- October 2017*
- Pereznieto, Paola, and Georigia Taylor.2014. “A Review of Approaches and Methods to Measure Economic Empowerment of Women and Girls.” *Gender & Development* 22 (2): 233-51.dor: 10.1080 /13552074.2014.920976.
- Roy, Cnandan and Chatterjee,Susmita and Dutta Gupta, Sangita (2017): “Women Empowerment Index: Construcuion of a Tool to Measure Rural Women Empowerment Level in India. Published in ANVESHAK”: *INTERNATIONAL JOURNAL OF MANAGEMENT (AIJM)*,Vol.7.no.1 (January 2018) :pp. 199-212.
- The Republic of The Union of Myanmar Ministry of Information:“*Textile and Garment Industry of Importance for Socio-Economic Development*”, January 07, 2018

Chapter I

Introduction

1.1 Introduction

Along with births and deaths, migration is one of the three demographic components of population change, and it has often been described as the most difficult to measure, model and forecast. Unlike fertility and mortality, migration is not a single unique event in time and space, but can repeat itself over the lifetime of an individual. Thus, the volume and type of migration measured and analyzed depend on the definitions used to identify a migrant. At the outset of this paper it is worthwhile to reiterate the call to improve the quality and quantity of the data available to generate information on migration flows and migrant stocks that is important to guide evidence-based policy-making and public debate. This task remains one of the principal challenges in the area of population studies.

People migrate based on the prevailing conditions and the reasons for it vary from one person to another depending on the situation that brought about the decision. Migration is a selective process affecting individuals or families with certain economic, social, educational and demographic characteristics.

1.2 Rationale of the Study

Most of the in-migrant and out-migrant rates had a significant positive association with per capital income, percent of workforce and share of state gross domestic product in the non-agriculture. The higher income and the sectoral transformation for the economy from agriculture to the non-agriculture sector trended to be associated with both higher in-migration and higher out-migration rates. Internal movement exert varying degrees of influence on specific countries of regions, depending on a mix of political, social, economic and environmental factors. In this research paper focus on immigration and emigration rates in East Phaunggyi Model Village.

1.3 Objectives of the study

The objectives of the study are

- (a) To describe the pull and push factors of migration in East Phaunggyi Model Village
- (b) To compare the relationship between immigration and emigration in East Phaunggyi Model Village

1.4 Scope and Limitations of the study

There are 1271 houses and 1394 households and 5720 people are live in East Phaunggyi village. This research based on 2019 primary survey data in East Phaunggyi Model Village. There are 10 wards in East Phaunggyi Model Village. They are *Say Youne Gohn, Aung Chan Thar, Htan Pin Gohn, Pan Taw Gohn (1), Pan Taw Gohn (2), Pan Taw Gohn (3), Set Kourk Thit, Khauing Paing, Yorma and Japan Kourk Thit*. In addition, it is bordered with Mingohn Model Village in the East, West-Phaunggyi Model Village in the West, Gway Daught Aie Village in the South, Nga Moe Yeaik Dam and Civil Service Academy in the North. According the research sample, only 900 households are participating in the research and also illustrate their conditions about migration.

1.5 Method of the study

The data used for this research were derived from both primary and secondary sources. In this survey, 900 sample households were selected by using simple random sampling from households and the survey was conducted by using well-structured questionnaire. Other information was obtained from Administrative office of East- Phaunggyi Model Village. The secondary data include village office records and other published materials from textbooks.

1.6 Organization of the study

In this research paper constitute with five chapters. They are Chapter I: Introduction, Chapter II: Literature Review, Chapter III: Background History, Chapter IV: Data Analysis of Migration and Chapter V: Findings and Conclusion.

Chapter II

Literature Review

2.1 Definition of Migration (Adewale, 2005)

Migration is considered as the movement of people from one geographical region to another, which may be on temporary or permanent basis. Migration occurs as a response to economic development as well as social, cultural, environmental and political factors and effects on areas of origin as well as destination.

2.2 Determinants of migration

According to Ravenstern's basic law which identified three major determinants of migration as follows:

- (a) Migration stimulating situations for individual migrants, for example, marriage, employment opportunities, political oppression and graduation from school;
- (b) Factors affecting the choice of destination, for example, cost of transportation and presence of relatives and friends; and
- (c) Socio-economic conditions that underlie individual migration decision, for example, the quality of housing in an area, ethnic or racial tolerance and economic investments in the area, especially those that can generate job opportunities (Boque, 1959).

2.3 Types of Migration



(a) Internal Migration

Internal Migration is the movement of people within one common place. The reasons that lead to this type of migration include the search for better education or the pursuit of a better economic opportunity in another area. Natural disasters and civil unrests can also trigger this type of migration.

(b) External Migration

External Migration generally refers to movement outside of one's home country. Common reasons for this include education, life improvement, and another economic prospects. Politics also play a huge part in causing people to migrate to other countries. An example of this type of migration is the movement of refugees into a neighboring nation due to unsafe conditions in their home country.

(c) Seasonal Migration

Seasonal migration is the movement of people from one area to another with each reason in pursuit of better conditions for themselves and their livestock. This type of movement is typically carried out by nomadic farmers who are mostly found in the sub-Saharan regions of

Africa. Pastoralist communities located in Kenya, for example, include the Samburu and the Turkana who move from one area to another in search of pasture for their livestock away from their homes. Once conditions improve, they usually head back.

2.4 Different types of Human Migration

(a) Economic migrants

Economic migration is the movement of people from one country to another to benefit from greater economic opportunities. It is often assumed that such migration is primarily from less economically developed countries to the more economically developed countries and from former colonies to the country that was the imperial power.

(b) Political Migrants

Many people are forced to migrate because of a war, civil war or state policies which discriminate against particular groups of citizens or people who oppose those in power. These people are unable to return home because they have fears of being persecuted and are unlikely to receive any protection from their government.

(c) Environmental Migrants

Environmental migrants are people who are forced to migrate from or flee their home region due to sudden or long-term changes to their local environment which adversely affects their wellbeing or livelihood.

(d) Family Reunion

This form of migration refers to members of a family coming to join one of their relatives who is resident in another country. This commonly includes civil partners, dependent children and elderly relatives.

2.5 Benefits of Migration

Migration can generate very large benefits for migrants, their families and countries of origin. The wages that migrants earn abroad can be many multiples of what they could earn doing similar jobs at home. For example, a study conducted in 2009 found that the ratio of wages earned by workers in the United States to wages earned by identical workers (with the same country of birth, years of schooling, age and sex, and rural/urban residence) abroad ranges from 15.45 (for workers born in Yemen) to 1.99 (workers born in the Dominican Republic), with a median ratio of 4.11.9. The wage differences and relative income gains from migration are

largest for lower-skilled workers, whose international movements around the world are the most restricted. The increase in migrants' earnings can also lead to considerable improvements in the welfare and human development of migrants' families, either directly if they are with the migrant in the host country, or indirectly through remittances. Importantly, the beneficial effects of migration for migrants and their families go beyond economic impacts and frequently include improvements in other dimensions of human development, such as education and health. For example, according to a recent report by the World Bank, "migrants from the poorest countries, on average, experienced a 15-fold increase in income, a doubling of school enrolment rates, and a 16-fold reduction in child mortality after moving to a developed country". In addition to benefiting individual migrants and their families, there is a large research literature that evidences the wider beneficial effects that emigration can have for migrants' countries of origin. Emigration can reduce unemployment and underemployment, contribute to poverty reduction, and – with the appropriate supportive policies – foster broader economic and social development in origin countries in a variety of ways. For example, the remittances sent by migrants back to their countries of origin provide significant financial capital flows and a relatively stable source of income. Remittances are generally a less volatile and more reliable source of foreign currency than other capital flows in many developing countries. According to the World Bank, in 1990 migrants remitted around USD 29 billion to lower- and middle-income countries in 1990. This amount had more than doubled to USD 74 billion in 2000 and reached USD 429 billion in 2016. Globally, remittances are now more than three times the amount of official development assistance. Migration can also result in the transfer of skills, knowledge and technology – effects that are hard to measure, but that could have considerable positive impacts on productivity and economic growth. Beyond these economic impacts, emigration can generate beneficial societal consequences for countries of origin, including poor and fragile States. For example, it is increasingly recognized that migrants can play a significant role in post-conflict reconstruction and recovery.

2.6 Migration in Myanmar



Migration within Myanmar and across its long borders, which cover Thailand, Laos, China, India and Bangladesh, is subjected to a range of drivers which are complex and are critical in affecting how and why people decide to move.

Of the 53.9 million people living within Myanmar, 70 percent live in rural areas. Following the general election held on 8 November 2015 there have been dramatic economic and cultural changes which have brought an increase in foreign investment and has also been driver of urbanization and rural to urban migration. Many people migrate internally as they want to improve their livelihood, to follow their family members, for marriage, for education or to avoid for socio-economic conditions. In 2014, 9.39 million people were internal migrants (which is approximately 20% of the population).

Regionally, Myanmar has grown to be the largest migration source country in the Greater Mekong Sub- region (GMS). The Myanmar Government estimate that there are 4.25 million Myanmar nationals living abroad. Regionally, drivers of migration can include higher wages in neighboring countries, conflict and environmental migration due to natural disasters among other factors.

It is also reported that up to 70% of migrants living abroad are based in Thailand, followed by Malaysia (15%), China (4.6%), Singapore (3.9%) and the USA (1.9%). IOM estimates there could be as many as 3 million Myanmar migrants living in Thailand as at 2016.

The highest number of migrants, according to the latest census, came from Mon State (427000), Kayin State (323000) and Shan State (236000).

Internal migrants in Myanmar consider following family (40.8%) and employment-related purposes (34.3%) as the main motivation for migration, followed by marriage (15.7%), education (2.2%) and conflict (0.7%). However, men are more likely to move for employment purposes (47%) compared to 23% for women and women to follow family (49% compared to 32% for men). Such differences can be explained by the under-representation of women in the labour force (50.5% compared to 85% for men) (Department of Population 2015).

Chapter III

Background History

3.1 Background History of East Phaunggyi Village

East Phaunggyi Model Village is situated in Hlegu township. Hlegu Township is narrow from south to north in breadth and longer in length from east to west leading to the Bago hills and with the tail in the Bago river just like a crocodile. The creek starting from Bago hills and combined into the Bago river is like the body of crocodile. This Nga Moe Yeaik creek was the main transport water way since olden days. Small villages are situated on both sides of the creek. There are many villages among them which has run away from Min Yan Kar after defeat. One of them is Phaunggyi Village. When going to war in water ways, it is necessary to cross them. There are three canals in these villages. They are Nga Moe Yeaik canals, Paung Lin canal and Ma Hue Yar canal. Min Yan Kar made raft and went to war along Nga Moe Yeaik creek. When so marching he took rest by typing the raft (phaung chi thi) as it was dark, from then on ward this village was known as “Phaunggyi”. It is called Phaunggyi east in the east of the creek and phaunggyi west in the west of the creek. There are 8 monasteries as well as Pagodas. The Pagodas were Linyaunggyi pagoda, which was built by Min Yan Kar Phaunggyi (East) Village started with a small number of houses. Gradually, it became a Model Village in 2006-2007.

3.2 Location and Area

Hlegu township borders with Hmawbi township and Taikkyi township in the West, Bago township of Bago region in the North and East, North Okkalapa township, North Dagon township and East Dagon township in the South. East Phaunggyi Model Village is situated 20 miles far from Hlegu township. Total area of village is 4 square miles and 2564 acres; the residential area is 1176 acres, 627 acres farms and garden, 3 acres for cemetery site, 256 acres for river, stream and pond, monasteries land is 5 acres and plot of cultivated land is 497 acres. East Phaunggyi Model Village tract comprises 10 wards. They are *Say Youne Gohn, Aung Chan Thar, Htan Pin Gohn, Pan Taw Gohn (1), Pan Taw Gohn (2), Pan Taw Gohn (3), Set Kourk Thit, Khaung Paing, Yorma and Japan Kourk Thit*. It is bordered with Mingohn Model Village in the East, Phaunggyi (West) Model Village in the West, Gway Daught Aie in the South. Nga Moe Yeaik Creek and Civil Service Academy in the North.

3.3 Profile of Population in East Phaunggyi Model Village

Table (1) Profile of Population

Category	Frequency
Houses	1271
Households	1314
Male	2797
Female	2923
Total Population	5720

Source: East Phaunggyi Model Village Survey Data, 2019

East Phaunggyi Model Village which is located in Hlegu township, Yangon Region. There are 1271 houses and 1314 households are resident in East Phaunggyi Model Village. According to the survey result, the population of East Phaunggyi Model Village was 5720 people, 2797 males and 2923 female respectively were living in East Phaunggyi Model Village. The study area was stratified into ten (10) zones based on the existing wards. These ten (10) wards represent as follow.

Table (2) Population by Ward in East Phaunggyi Model Village

Sr.No	Ward	Number of Households	Population
1	Say Youne Gohn	224	894
2	Aung Chan Thar	101	411
3	Htan Pin Gohn	105	407
4	Pan Taw Gohn (1)	144	695
5	Pan Taw Gohn (2)	128	667
6	Pan Taw Gohn (3)	162	594
7	Set Kourk Thit	114	464
8	Khauing Paing	109	444
9	Yorma	156	879
10	Japan Kourk Thit	71	265
	Total	1314	5720

Source: East Phaunggyi Model Village Survey Data, 2019

Chapter IV

Data Analysis of Migration

4.1 Number of households by wards

East Phaunggyi Model Village which is located in Hlegu township, Yangon Region. There are 1271 houses and 1314 households are resident in East Phaunggyi Model Village. The population of East Phaunggyi Model Village was 5720 people in 2019 survey. The study area was stratified into ten (10) zones based on the existing wards. These ten (10) wards represent as follow. A total of 900 respondent representing 68% of sample population (in 2019 survey) were surveyed using random sampling technique for the distribution of questionnaire (Table 3). A total of 900 respondent representing 68% of sample population (in 2019 survey) were surveyed using random sampling technique for the distribution of questionnaire.

Table (3) Number of sample households by ward

Sr.No	Ward	Number of Households	Number of Sample Households
1	Say Youne Gohn	224	150
2	Aung Chan Thar	101	70
3	Htan Pin Gohn	105	80
4	Pan Taw Gohn (1)	144	100
5	Pan Taw Gohn (2)	128	70
6	Pan Taw Gohn (3)	162	80
7	Set Kourk Thit	114	100
8	Khauing Paing	109	100
9	Yorma	156	100
10	Japan Kourk Thit	71	50
	Total	1314	900

Source: East Phaunggyi Model Village Survey Data, 2019

4.2 Respondent by Age group in East Phaunggyi Model Village

Table (4) shows age group of respondents in the survey. According to the survey result, the majority of respondents were 16-45 and 46-65 age groups, 48 percent and 40 percent respectively. According to Rahman et al. (2007), age is a major factor positively associated with migration.

Table (4) Respondent by Age group

Age group	Frequency	Percent
0-15	6	1%
16-45	428	48%
46-65	360	40%
over 65	106	12%
Total	900	100%

Source: East Phaunggyi Model Village Survey Data, 2019

4.3 Level of Education by Respondent

Table (5) shows that respondents with Primary School level are 38.9 percent, Middle School level was 35.6 percent, High School level was 17.2 percent, Undergraduate level of respondent was 3.3 percent, graduate level respondent was 4.9 percent and post graduate was 0.1 percent respectively. Respondents of primary and Middle school level were mostly found in East Phaunggyi Model Village.

Most of the respondents have obtained only primary education and this is evident in 38.9 % of their response while 8.3 % of the respondents have obtained their university education. This low level of education may be responsible for active migration, so as to get a better education.

Table (5) Level of Education

Level of education	Frequency	Percent
Primary	350	38.9%
Secondary	320	35.6%
High School	155	17.2%
Undergraduate	30	3.3%
Graduate	44	4.9%
Post Graduate	1	0.1%
Total	900	100.0%

Source: East Phaunggyi Model Village Survey Data, 2019

4.4 Population Growth Rate in East Phaunggyi Model Village

According to administrative records, in 2018, total population of East Phaunggyi Model Village were 4435, among them male population were 2152 and female were 2283 respectively. And then there are 1043 houses and 1064 households in East Phaunggyi Model Village. As a result of this research, in 2019, there were 2797 males and 2923 female population were resident in East Phaunggyi Model Village. This result can conclude that 28.97 % increase in population during 2018-2019.

Table (6) Population Growth Rate in East Phaunggyi

Year	Gender		Total Population	Increase	Decrease	Growth Rate
	Male	Female				
2018	2152	2283	4435	-	-	-
2019	2797	2923	5720	1285	-	28.97%

Source: East Phaunggyi Model Village Survey Data, 2019

4.5 Marital Status by Respondent

Most of the respondents have married showed in 74.8 % of their response. This shows marital status also can be a factor of migration in East Phaunggyi Model Village.

Table (7) Marital Status by Respondents

Marital Status	Frequency	Percent
single	65	7.2%
married	673	74.8%
widow	128	14.2%
divorce	34	3.8%
total	900	100.0%

Source: East Phaunggyi Model Village Survey Data, 2019

4.6 Types of Settlement in East Phaunggyi Model Village

Types of living in this case, means temporary living or permanent living in the city. According to the result of questionnaire, 75% of households fell into as a permanent living and 25% are temporary living in this village. Among them more than one half of temporary living households replied if their economic condition better than previous place, they will decide to live there as a permanent residents.

Table (8) Types of settlement

Type of settlement	Frequency	Percent
Permanent	674	75%
Temporary	226	25%
Total	900	100%

Source: East Phaunggyi Model Village Survey Data, 2019

4.7 Reasons of Permanent Settlement in East Phaunggyi Model Village

Table (9) Reason of permanent settlement

Sr.No	Reason of permanent settlement	Frequency	Percent
1	Employment opportunity	512	76.0%
2	Government Job	44	6.5%
3	Education	11	1.6%
4	Health	14	2.1%
5	Safety	2	0.3%
6	Religion work	5	0.7%
7	Marital Condition	86	12.8%
	Total	674	100.0%

Source: East Phaunggyi Model Village Survey Data, 2019

Based on questionnaire results, the reason for permanent living in 10 wards of East Phaunggyi Model Village were classified into seven groups. These reasons are:-(1) Employment opportunity, (2) Government job, (3) Education, (4) Health, (5) Safety (6) Religion Work and (7) Marital Condition. According to research result, the main reason of permanent settlement in East Phaunggyi Model Village for households were Employment opportunities, 76% of the permanent residents for their lives.

4.8 Reasons of Migration

There are a number of reasons why people are migrating to other places in these areas. They are migrating one place to another because of the pull and push factors of this village. Generally, it can be referred that push and pull factors are the reasons and the conditions that drive the people from one place to another place.

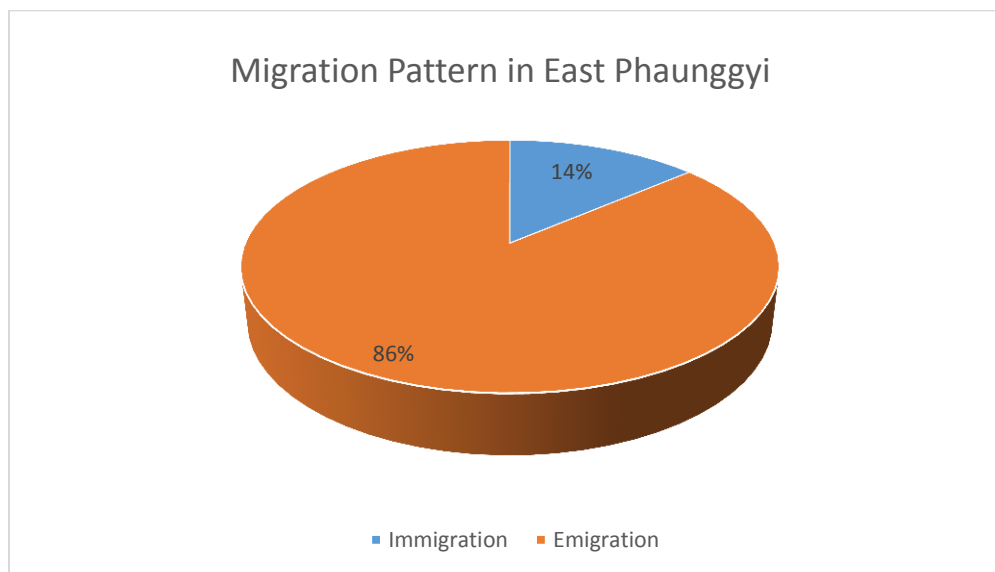
4.8.1 Migration Pattern in East Phaunggyi Model Village

Table (10) Migration Pattern in East Phaunggyi Model Village

Type of Migration	Frequency	Percent
Immigration	31	14%
Emigration	195	86%
Total	226	100%

Source: East Phaunggyi Model Village Survey Data, 2019

Figure-1 Migration Pattern in East Phaunggyi Model Village



The above table shows that the migration stream in East Phaunggyi Model Village. There are 226 households living as a temporarily in East Phaunggyi Model Village. As a result, 86% of households were emigrants and 14% were immigrants in East Phaunggyi Model Village.

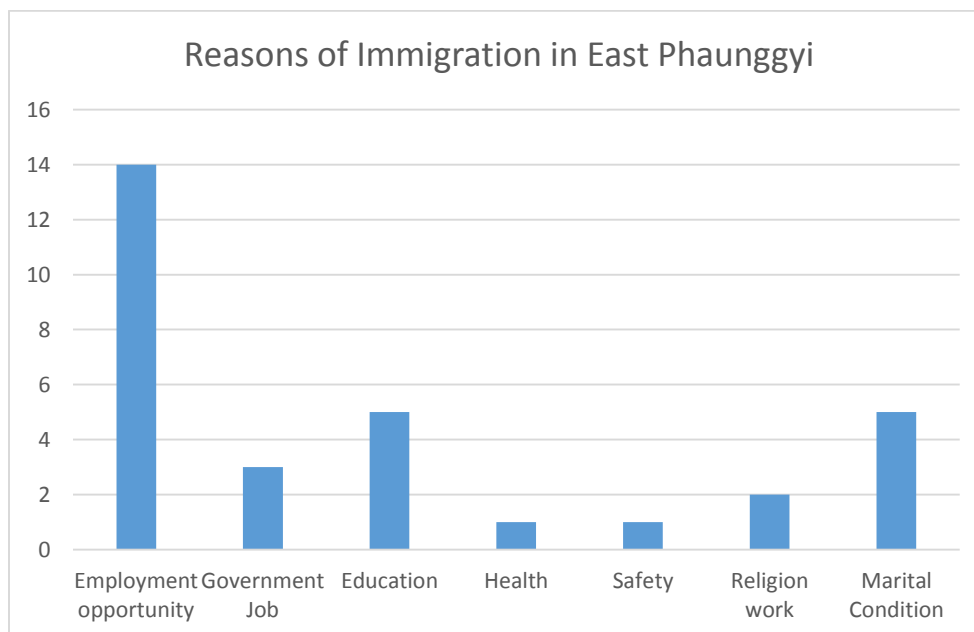
4.8.2 Reasons of Immigration (pull factors)

Table (11) Reasons of Immigration in East Phaunggyi Model Village

Sr.No	Reason of Immigration	Frequency	Percent
1	Employment opportunity	14	45%
2	Government Job	3	10%
3	Education	5	16%
4	Health	1	3%
5	Safety	1	3%
6	Religion work	2	6%
7	Marital Condition	5	16%
	Total	31	100%

Source: East Phaunggyi Model Village Survey Data, 2019

Figure-2 Reasons of Immigration in East Phaunggyi Model Village



Source: East Phaunggyi village Survey data, 2019

Based on questionnaire results, the reason for immigration in 10 wards of East Phaunggyi Model Village were classified into seven groups. These reasons are:-(1) Employment

opportunity, (2) Government job, (3) Education, (4) Health, (5) Safety (6) Religion Work and (7) Marital Condition. According to research result, to get employment opportunity for respondents were the largest amount of reason for immigration in East Phaunggyi Model Village. Because of the research result, there are five types of employment in this village. They are government employee, company employee, private employee, private employee and others are causal workers.

The main reason of immigration in East Phaunggyi Model Village for households were employment opportunities, means economic development for their lives. Secondly, educational attainment and family migration were also the reason of immigration to East Phaunggyi Model Village.

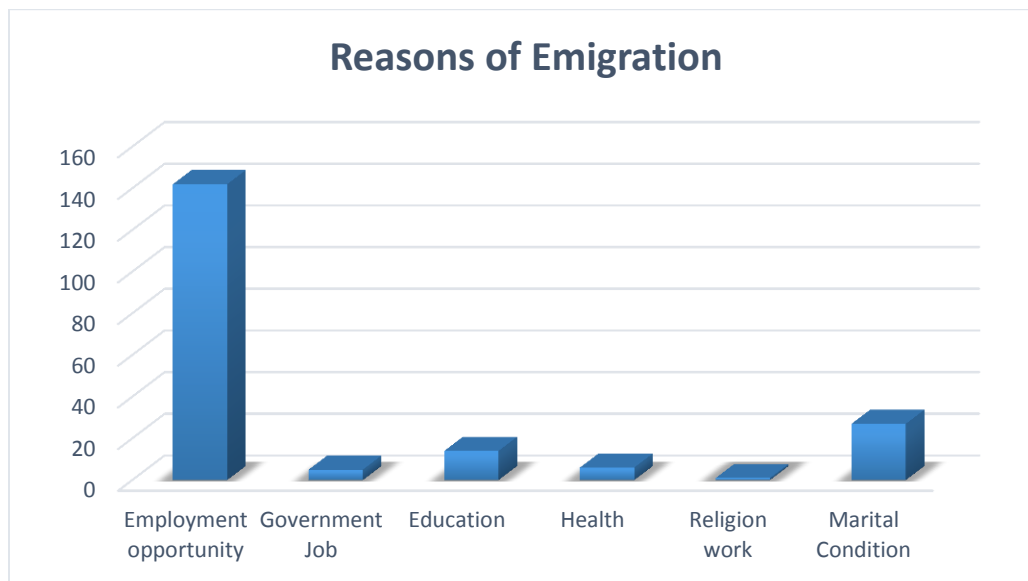
4.8.3 Reasons for Emigration (Push Factor)

Table (12) Reason of Emigration in East Phaunggyi Model Village

Sr.No	Reason of Emigration	Frequency	Percent
1	Employment opportunity	142	73%
2	Government Job	5	3%
3	Education	14	7%
4	Health	6	3%
5	Religion work	1	1%
6	Marital Condition	27	14%
	Total	195	100%

Source: East Phaunggyi Model Village Survey Data, 2019

Figure-3 Reasons of Emigration



Source: East Phaunggyi Model Village Survey Data, 2019

Based on questionnaire results, the reason for permanent living in 10 wards of East Phaunggyi Model Village were classified into six groups. These reasons are:-(1) Employment opportunity, (2) Government job, (3) Education, (4) Health, (5) Religion Work and (6) Marital Condition. According to research result, the main reason of emigration in East Phaunggyi Model Village for households were Employment opportunities for their lives. According to the research result, there are two types of emigration in East Phaunggyi Model Village. They are internal migration and international migration.

In internal migration, they were migrant to rural and urban areas for their economic opportunities, family migration, education and other reasons. They migrated to Hlegu township, Bago Region and Yangon Region for their employment opportunities and some of them are also migrated for their education attainment.

For international migration, according to the survey result, they migrated to Malaysia, Thailand and some other countries for their employment opportunities.

Chapter V

Findings and Conclusion

Migration is considered as the movement of people from one geographical region to another, which may be on temporary or permanent basis. Migration occurs as a response to economic development as well as social, cultural, environmental and political factors and effects on areas of origin as well as destination.

East Phaunggyi Model Village which is located in Hlegu township, Yangon Region. There are 1271 houses and 1314 households are resident in East Phaunggyi Model Village. The population of East Phaunggyi Model Village was 5720 people in 2019 survey. The study area was stratified into ten (10) zones based on the existing wards.

The data used for this research were derived from both primary and secondary sources. In this survey, 900 sample households were selected by using simple random sampling from households and the survey was conducted by using well-structured questionnaire. According to the survey result, the majority of respondents were 16-45 and 46-65 age groups, 48 percent and 40 percent respectively. Most of the respondents have obtained only primary education and this is evident in 38.9 % of their response while 8.3 % of the respondents have obtained their university education.

According to administrative records, in 2018, total population of East Phaunggyi Model Village were 4435 residents and 5720 residents were settlement in 2019. The population growth rate during 2018-2019 was 28.97 % in East Phaunggyi Model Village.

The reason for permanent settlement are:-(1) Employment opportunity, (2) Government job, (3) Education, (4) Health, (5) Safety (6) Religion Work and (7) Marital Condition. According to research result, the main reason of permanent settlement in East Phaunggyi Model Village for households were Employment opportunities for their lives.

There are 226 households living as a temporarily in East Phaunggyi Model Village. As a result, 86% of households were emigrants and 14% were immigrants in East Phaunggyi Model Village.

The main reason of immigration in East Phaunggyi Model Village for households were employment opportunities, means economic development for their lives. Secondly, educational attainment and family migration were also the reason of immigration to East Phaunggyi Model Village.

According to research result, the main reason of emigration in East Phaunggyi Model Village for households were Employment opportunities for their lives. According to the research result, there are two types of emigration in East Phaunggyi Model Village. They are internal migration and international migration.

In internal migration, they were migrant to rural and urban areas for their economic opportunities, family migration, education and other reasons. They migrated to Hlegu township, Bago Region and Yangon Region for their employment opportunities and some of them are also migrated for their education attainment.

For international migration, according to the survey result, they migrated to Malaysia, Thailand and some other countries for their employment opportunities.

Acknowledgements

I would like to express my deepest appreciation to Dr. Yi Yi Win, Rector of Co-operative University, Thanlyin, for her permission to write this research paper.

My completion of this research could not have been accomplished without the support of my principal Dr. Tin Lei Lei Win, Principal of Co-operative College, Phaunggyi. I cannot express enough thanks for her support and encouragement.

Furthermore, I feel to acknowledge my indebtedness and deep sense of gratitude to my guidance Dr. Daw Khin May Than, Retired Professor, Yangon University of Economics, whose valuable guidance and kind supervision given to me throughout the research which shaped the present work as its show.

I am also grateful to my Professor Daw Aye Aye Mar, Head of Statistics Department, Co-operative University, Thanlyin, for her monitoring and close guidance to accomplish this paper.

Finally, I would like to express my gratitude towards leaders and villagers of East Phaunggyi who given the chance to do research study area.

References:

1. Edith Ochuko AMREVURAYIRE University of Benin, Geography & Regional Planning Department, Benin City, Nigeria. CONSEQUENCES OF RURAL-URBAN MIGRATION ON THE SOURCE REGION OF UGHIEVWEN CLAN DELTA STATE NIGERIA, Vincent Nduka OJEH, WASCAL-Federal University of Technology, GRP-WACS, Akure, Nigeria.
2. Dr. May Thu Naing, Tutor, Department of Geography, University of Distance Education, Mandalay, 2008, A Geographic Study on Migration in Mandalay City.
3. *Dilip Ratha, Sanket Mohapatra ,Elina Scheja,, Impact of Migration on Economic and Social Development: A Review of Evidence and Emerging Issues,*
4. Ivan Etzo, University of Cagliari, May 2008, Internal migration: a review of the literature,.
WORLD MIGRATION REPORT 2018, International Organization for Migration.
5. Kyaing Kyaing Thet is a lecturer in the Department of Statistics at the Institute of Economics in Monywa, Myanmar, Pull and Push Factors of Migration: A Case Study in the Urban Area of Monywa Township, Myanmar.
6. Daw Wint War , Tutor, Department of Co-operative Studies, Co-operative University, Sagaing, An Analysis on the Socio-Economic Condition of Phaunggyi (East) Model Village.
7. Leila Ezzarqui, Senior Research Officer, Alliance of Civilizations Secretariat, United Nations, New York , Research Paper on Migration,
8. Dr Thin Thin Khaing, Assistant Lecturer, Department of Geography, Yangon University, Urbanization: The Structures of Sustainable Urban Landscape of Myanmar
9. Saw Yu May, Lecturer, Geography Department, University of Yangon, July 2015, Migration as a Challenge for Myanmar's Socio-economic Development: Case Studies of Hpa - an and Mrauk- U township in Myanmar, International Conference on Burma/Myanmar Studies, Burma/ Myanmar in Transition: Connectivity, Changes and Challenges, University Academic Service centre (UNISERV), Chiang Mai University, Thailand.
10. Nyi Nyi and Phillip Guest, September 2017, Determinants of Migration streams in Myanmar, International Population Conference of the International Union for the

Scientific Study of Population (IUSSP) in Cape Town, South Africa at the Cape Town International Conference Centre (CTICC).

11. Department of Population, Ministry of Immigration and Population, The 2014 Myanmar Population and Housing Census, The Union Report, Census Report Volume 2.
12. Dr. Amina Maharjan, Dr.Theingi Myint, February 2015, Internal Labour Migration Study in the Dry Zone, Shan State and the SouthEast of Myanmar.
13. Dr.Michael P Griffiths, Director of Research, Social Policy & Poverty Research Group, U Kyaw Zaw Oo, Research Office, Social Policy & Poverty Research Group, Result from 2013-2014 Formal Sector Survey (SPPRG & SSB), Formal Sector Internal Migration in Myanmar.
14. Department of Population, Misistry of labour, Immigration and Population with technical assistance from UNFPA, December 2016, Thematic Report on Migration and Urbanization.
15. Lae Mon Thein, 2013, “ *A Case Study on New Village Movement in Myanmar*”, *Research Journal*, Co-operative University, Thanlyin,.

SOCIO ECONOMIC CONDITIONS IMPACT ON POVERTY REDUCTION: ANALYSIS OF HOUSEHOLD SURVEY IN BYAUK YOE VILLAGE TRACT, TWANTAY TOWNSHIP, YANGON REGION

Zar Zar Thein Tun¹

Abstract

This research is focused on the development of rural areas and reducing rural poverty in Myanmar. This paper deals with the case of Byauk Yoe village tract, Twantay Township, Yangon Region. Data were randomly collected 140 households from 369 households in the study area. In April 2019, a sample survey was conducted in Byauk Yoe village. The research methods in this study were conducted both descriptive and analytical type. Households for this study were selected by using systematic sampling method and level of precision is 5 %. The objectives of this study are to study the economic activities in rural area; second one is to review socio-economic conditions for study area. The last one is to analyze the impact of socio economic factors on poverty alleviation. In the study the main research question is which influencing factors that determine the poverty alleviation through the socio-economic development. The results showed that male and female population aged between 15 years and 64 years are 208 and 248 respectively. To analyze the multiple regression model, the food expenditure of sample household was used as dependent variable and gender of household head, household size, number of economically active members, occupation of household head in each household were used as independent variables. Durbin-Watson (DW) and Variance Inflation Factor (VIF) were used for determining the adequacy of the estimated regression model. The value of calculated (DW) was 1.904 and F value was 2.883, the model was significant at 5 % level. Therefore, it can be concluded that multiple regression model is fitted. According to the results, household size of each household was significant at 5 % level. Therefore, the household size is influential factor of food expenditure for each household.

Key words: influencing factors, economically active members, poverty alleviation

INTRODUCTION

Myanmar is one of the countries in Southeast Asia, at 676,578 sq km. Myanmar is traditionally an agricultural country and agriculture sector remains as a major contributor to GDP, and its share of export earnings is about 40%. Agriculture sector provides employment to more than 60 percent of work force. In addition food security for the people and raw material production for domestic agro-based industries are heavily depending on the agricultural sector. At the territory level, Myanmar is administratively divided into 17 states/regions. The states/regions are sub-divided into 64 districts which are further divided into 324 townships. The townships are subdivided into 13759 village tracts. According to survey data 2015, there are 70838 villages in Myanmar. The rural population is more than urban population. Over seventy percent of the people are now living in rural area. The development of every village helps the development of our nation. The government is implementing the projects in a speedy way for rural development.

One of the projects is village development planning (VDP) which is an initiative of the Department of Rural, Ministry of Agriculture, Livestock and Irrigation. The initiative was launched in early 2015 with the aim to support and facilitate the process of people-centered participatory village development planning, identification of village development priorities

¹ Associate Professor, Department of Statistics, Co-operative University, Thanlyin

and mobilization of financing for meeting funding needs for the assessed priorities. Another project named Saemaul Undong, New Village Movement is an important movement for the development of the rural community. Saemaul Undong is a national campaign that positively branded the government's major program of rural modernization and development and mobilized every village, and nearly every village. Saemaul Undong is an autonomous movement among villagers in which villagers are the main implementation bodies and the government is a supporter for its successful implementation.

SMU projects have been starting in Myanmar since 2012. All of SMU activities in villages are implemented under the guiding of Ministry of Co-operatives, now Ministry of Agriculture, Livestock and Irrigation. It undertakes all activities and could implement the SMU model village projects successfully from 2012 to until now. Socio economic status is determined by and individual's achievements in: education, employment and occupational status, and income and wealth.

OBJECTIVE OF THE STUDY

The objectives of the study are:

- (i) to review socio-economic conditions for study area
- (ii) to analyze the impact of socio economic factors on poverty alleviation for study area

SCOPE AND LIMITATION OF STUDY

The scope of this study is to investigate the socio economic status of Byauk Yoe village tract, Twantay Township, Yangon Region. On April 2019, a sample survey was conducted in Byauk Yoe village tract. Out of 65 village tracts in Twantay Township, the present study is focused on Byauk Yoe village tract because it is one of the remote villages and the transportation is quite easy to Hlaing Tharyar Township and Twnatay Township with the purpose of noticing the development of the villages.

METHOD OF STUDY

The research design was a survey design. The research methods adopted in this study were a condition of both descriptive and analytical type. Households for this study were selected by using systematic sampling method and level of precision is 5 %. We use multiple regression analysis and binary logistic regression analysis.

This analysis is based on the socioeconomic survey (SES) which is sample of households in the Byauk Yoe village tract. The data for this study come from a sample of households 140 selected from 369 households, which were approximately 40 % of total households. The survey was conducted by using well-structured questionnaire.

SOCIO ECONOMIC BACKGROUND AND CURRENT SITUATION OF BYAUK YOE VILLAGE TRACT

Byauk Yoe village is situated in Twantay Township, Yangon Region. Byauk Yoe village is included in Byauk Yoe village tract, consisting of Byauk Yoe village, Ywar Lay village and Myat Ni Gnone village. As geographic location aspect, it has plantable land 950 acres. There are 369 households, and total population 1529 people. As transport of this village, the roads are dirt roads which connect the main road close to Twantay Township.

During the three seasons, they usually used the unfortified roads. Regarding the infrastructure for education, there is one Basic Education Middle School and two Basic Education Primary Schools and total students 307 people and 98 people and teachers 12 people and 98 people respectively. The study area has no one health care centre. The nearest hospital is Twantay General Hospital in Twantay Township. There is no market but some households operate a retail shop or a mini store.

Descriptive Statistics for Households of Survey Data in Byauk Yoe Village Tract

The data for this study come from a sample household 140, total population 676 people selected from 369 households. The survey data have been assigned to three age groups according to Myanmar official classification. According to this classification, the largest age group was recorded for the 15 to 64 years class. The lowest age group was recorded 65 years old and above.

Table (1) shows that the age groups are officially categorized into three classes introduced by the Myanmar official classification. They are 0 to 14 considered as children, 15 to 64 considered as working class and 65 and above considered as dependents.

Therefore, the number of persons in working age group was larger than that of dependents in this village. In other words, it can also say that the volume of labor force was high in this township. The gender count as represented in Table (1) was 308 males and 368 females. The gender ratio was approximately 1:1 in the village. There were 84 males per 100 females.

Table (1) Selected Age-Groups by Gender of Myanmar Official Classification

No.	Age Group	Population		%	
		Male	Female	Male	Female
1.	0-14	81	104	26	28
2.	15-64	208	248	68	68
3.	Over 65	19	16	6	4
	Total	308	368	100	100

Source: Survey Data, 2019

Labour Force in the Village

The number of economically population (workers) and dependent population, counted among the family members, resulted in ratio 56 % workers versus 44 % dependent or inactive of total respondents in study area. See Table (3). Table (2) shows that the population 10 years and over by occupational status and gender in the village. According to the table, total own account workers (agribusiness) were males 63 and 35 were females and percent 14 %. Own account workers (trade) were males 8 and females 1 and 1 %. Private employee was males 5 and female 8 and 2 %. Similarly unpaid family workers were 12 %. Full time students were 14 %.

Table (2) Population 10 years and Over by Occupational Status and Genders in the Village

Occupational Status	Male	Female	Total	%
Own account workers (agribusiness)	63	35	98	14.50%
Rental acre workers	29	5	34	5.03%
Agribusiness	1	3	4	0.59%
Livestock	3	12	15	2.22%
Own account worker(trade)	8	1	9	1.33%
Employee (private)	5	8	13	1.92%
Government employee	3	6	9	1.33%
Unpaid family worker	38	45	83	12.28%
Others	51	22	73	10.80%
Sought work	25	16	41	6.07%
Did not seek work	24	34	58	8.58%
Full time students	60	34	94	13.91%
Pensioner, retired , elderly	39	45	84	12.43%
Disabled	2	3	5	0.74%
Children	26	30	56	8.28%
Total	377	299	676	100%

Source: Survey Data, 2019

Table (3) Worker's Participation of the Study Area

No.	Gender	Active		Dependency	
		Population	%	Population	%
1.	Male	226	60	151	51
2.	Female	153	40	146	49
	Total	379	100	297	100

Source: Survey Data, 2019

Marital Status of the Village

Table (4) shows that marital status of the village. According to this table, there were 368 women. Of these 143 were married. There were 308 men. Of these, 147 were married.

Table (4) Population Aged 15 Years and Over by Marital Status in the Village

Marital	Male	Female	Total	%
Single	157	215	372	55.03%
Married	147	143	290	42.90%
Widowed	4	9	13	1.92%
Divorced/ Separated	0	1	1	0.15%
Total	308	368	676	100%

Source: Survey Data, 2019

Education and Health Status of the Village

There is one Basic Education Middle School and two Basic Education Primary Schools exist in the study area. The number of teachers and school children are as shown in Table (5). The level of literacy is important to define the socioeconomic structure of the households in the study region. Most of the elder generation (i.e. those who fall into the age groups 51-55, 56-60 and above 61 years) were recorded as monastery level education, whereas most members of the working class, of both males and females, fell in the primary and middle school education level due to struggle for their livelihood. According to Table 6, the overall literacy percentage in the study area was recorded 97.5 %. 2.5 % of the population was classified as illiterates. Most of the literates visited primary and middle level school. According to Table (6), total population who completed primary school was 60 males and 124 females. Middle school level populations was 174 and 83 were males and 91 were females. University graduates constituted 24 %. Post graduates constituted 2.1%.

Table (5) Primary, Middle and High School level Students by Gender and Teacher-Student Ratio in the Village

Educational Level	Students	Teachers	Teacher-Student Ratio
Primary	98	9	10:1
Middle	307	12	26:1

Source: Survey Data, 2019

Table (6) Population of Literacy and Educational Status in Village

Educational level	Male	%	Female	%	Population	%
Monastery	67	21.7	49	13.3	116	17.13
Primary	60	19.4	124	33.7	184	27.18
Middle	83	26.9	91	24.7	174	25.70
High	45	14.6	29	7.9	74	10.93
Graduate	10	3.2	14	3.8	24	3.55
Post graduate	3	1.0	11	3.0	14	2.07
Vocational Training	32	10.4	42	11.4	74	10.93
Total literate	300	97.1	360	97.8	660	97.49
Illiterate	9	2.9	8	2.2	17	2.51

Source: Survey Data, 2019

Regarding health, the study area has no one health care center. The nearest hospital is Twantay General Hospital in Twantay Township. Flu is prevalent, especially in the wet season. In the cold months, bronchitis and pneumonia are very common.

Housing Condition in the Village and Electric Power Supply

The structure of houses varies between households, in terms of the roof material and shape, the construction of the walls and floors. The results show that the predominant roof structure used in the study area was thatch although tin (metal sheet) was used more frequently in village. The predominant wall material was bamboo and wood in village. Those were probably chosen, depending on the availability and cost.

In the study area, only Byoke Yoe village can use electricity. Most of them use battery for lighting and others. Some residents use their generators for their own needs and for the supply their neighborhoods. According to the survey data, most of households used the fly-proof toilets.

Water Supply and Sanitation Condition

The inhabitants of the village have access to two types of water sources;

1. Surface water, no cover (lake)
2. Ground water (tube wells)

The most used water source is lake water for drinking water and household water. They did not test the PH level of lake water. Another finding of these interviews was that none of the respondents uses separate sources for drinking and household water. There are 99.7 % of households were used no covered lake water for drinking and household use. The lake water has not been tested for all of the usages.

Firewood Consumption (or) Fuel for Cooking

According to the results 80 % of households used firewood. Wood fuel is the most used energy source for cooking. 65 % of all households interviewed, collected the wood themselves. 35 % bought their firewood requirement from different suppliers. These suppliers cut wood from near forests, either legally or illegally. They all use the traditional three legged stove and cook in open air during the cold and dry season.

Transportation and Communication

The side roads connect the neighborhood villages are dirt roads. During the wet season, these unfortified roads are in real bad condition. Therefore, they are used the boats or motor boats along the stream. It chased to the main road close to Twantay Township. During the dry and cold seasons they used the unfortified roads. The inter-village connection roads are mostly used by using cars, small lorries, small tractors, motor cycles, bicycles. To facilitate the transportation of vital goods, roads often are repaired on a self-help basis by the local authority. The finding was the possession of motorcycles is dominant over other all transportation vehicles in the village. Similarly the possession of bicycle is the highest dispersal. The possession of cars in the study area is 8 households. Regarding the telecommunication, there is at least one mobile telephone in every household.

Household Size and Expenditure for Food

According to results there are 31 households which have 3 members and it is the most frequently and percentage 22.1 %. The average family size was 5. Family life, depending on the number of family members, was closed as high level for the family with 1 to 3 members,

as medium level, for the families with 4 to 6 members and as well as low level for families with 7 and above. Therefore, the household size was medium level in this village. Most of the monthly expenditure fell between 50,000 to 100,000 kyats and the percentage was 27.9 %.

Economic Factors

The economic activities of the study area are divided into three sectors. They are

- (1) Agriculture sector
- (2) Self-employment sector
- (3) Other sectors

Workers of these sectors in addition to their main tasks often take up casual jobs and small scale animal husbandry, cultivation of crops or open retail shops.

Agriculture Sector

Agriculture is the main income generating activity in the study area. 20.1 % of the total population in the interview areas engaged in agriculture. Paddy is the main cultivated crop. There are 950 acres plan table lands for cultivating. Types of cultivated land are generally divided into three classes.

- Le lands, which are mostly found in the village. Farmers cultivate paddy, and the amount of harvest depends on the rainfall.
- Ya lands, which are found along the streams where
- Garden lands, which include fruit gardens, home gardens and vegetable gardens, where mangoes and vegetable are grown.

Agriculture practice is bi-crop character. Generally the rainfall is regular and abundant, sometimes precipitation is insufficient to plough and the rain comes too late for planting. There is no dam and cannel system to irrigate the farms. Therefore farmers totally depend on rainfall for cultivation. Most of the farmers in the interview area own 4 to 10 acres of farm land. Some of the land owners have no sufficient manpower resources for farming. They hire laborers during the farming seasons. The labor wages for adult males is 7000 kyats (approximately \$ 5) and for adult female is 4000 kyats (approximately \$ 3) per day. These incomes however vary, dependent on the working duration, determined by the farm size and type. Most of the farmers in the interview area use cultivated machinery.

All farmers in the interview area earn their extra income by undertaking side jobs. The small scale animal husbandry was found to be one of the most common side-jobs. It is not only a source for family food but also for market. Some farmers undertake causal jobs by renting their cultivated machinery for cultivating and so on. Some operate a retail shop or a mini store.

Self-Employment Sector and Other Sector

97 people operates self-employment sector. It represents 14.35 % of the sample data. This sector included rice mill owners, tailors. 101 people operate other sectors which include employee (private).

Descriptive Statistics for Household Heads in the Village

Gender – Age Structure, Marital Status and Educational Attainment

According to the results there are 129 males headed households and 92 %. The ratio of the male headed households was higher than that of female. As the results 86.4 % of male household heads were married and 1.4 % of female household heads were married. Education is an important determinant in earnings. Most of the household heads were primary education level and 45 % of study area.

ANALYSIS OF SOCIOECONOMIC FACTORS OF HOUSEHOLD IN THE STUDY AREA

Multiple Regression Model for Sample Households

Multiple regression analysis can be applied to investigate the influencing factors of food expenditure in sample households. To analyze the multiple regression model, the food expenditure of sample household was used as dependent variable and gender of household head, household size, number of economically active members, occupation of household head in each household were used as independent variables.

The estimates multiple regression model is

$$\hat{Y}_i = b_0 + b_1 X_{1i} + b_2 X_{2i} + b_3 X_{3i} + b_4 X_{4i}$$

In constructing the model, the variables are noted as:

Y_i = Food expenditure in i^{th} household

X_i = Vector of independent variable

$$= [X_{1i}, X_{2i}, X_{3i}, X_{4i}]$$

X_{1i} = 1 if household head is male (0 if household head is female)

X_{2i} = number of family members

X_{3i} = number of labor force (economically active) members in household

X_{4i} = Occupation of household head

Durbin-Watson (DW) and Variance Inflation Factor (VIF) were used for determining the adequacy of the estimated regression model. The value of calculated (DW) was 1.904 and F value was 2.883, the model was significant at 5 % level. Therefore, it can be concluded that multiple regression model is fitted. The results of estimated multiple regression model were shown in Table (7).

According to the results in Table (7), household size of each household was significant at 5 % level. Therefore, the household size is influential factor of food expenditure for each household.

Table (7) Relationship between the food expenditure of sample household and gender of household head, household size, number of economically active members, occupation of household head in each household

Independent Variables	B	Sig
Gender of Household Head	-55053.374	0.539
Number of Family Member	35391.524	0.01*
Number of Labor Force Member	2528.999	0.911
Occupation of Household Head	157.312	0.936
Constant	65763.533	0.557
F value = 2.883		

Source: Survey Data, 2019

Note: * represent 5 % level of significance

Binary Logistic Model for Poor Households in the Sample

According to the 140 sample households, 3.6 % of the households were poor households since their monthly food expenditures per head were below the food poverty line in Myanmar which was the value of 1590 kyats per day for individual in 2017.

Binary logistic regression analysis was applied to investigate the influential factors of poor households. To fit the binary logistic regression model, the poor household, designated by 1 if household food expenditure was below the poverty line in Myanmar 1590 kyats per day for individuals was used as dependent variable and household size, gender of household head, age of household head, household head's occupation were used as independent variables. The probability that the households' expenditure is above or equal to the poverty line. That is ,

$$\text{Poverty line} = P(Y_i = 1 / X_i) = \frac{e^{X_i' \beta_j}}{1 + e^{X_i' \beta_j}}$$

In constructing the model, the variables are noted as:

Y_i = 1 if households' food expenditure for i^{th} household is below the food poverty line
 = 0 otherwise

X_i = Vector of independent variable

$$= [X_{1i}, X_{2i}, X_{3i}, X_{4i}]$$

X_{1i} = Number of family members

X_{2i} = 1 if household head male (0=female)

X_{3i} = Age of household head

X_{4i} = Household head's occupation

According to the results in Table (8), number of household members was significantly at 5 % level. It indicates that the number of family member was influential factor for household poverty.

Table (8) Results of Binary Logistic Model

Independent Variables	B	S.E	Wald	df	Sig
Number of Family Member	-1.331	.557	5.702	1	0.017
Gender of household head	-.631	1.756	.129	1	.719
Age of household head	.051	.033	2.347	1	.125
Household head's occupation	-.275	.191	2.091	1	.148

Source: Survey Data, 2019

CONCLUSION AND RECOMMENDATION

A key finding of this study is household size was influential factors for food poverty of each household. Although they were not suffered from food poverty, their living standards were low conditions. Because of working agribusiness, most of them are no worried about main food especially rice and vegetables. Another pressure is on the underdeveloped infrastructure hamper the chances for the residents to structure solid bases for their families' well-being. Limitation for successful farming by the lack of irrigation systems form barriers and lack of technical knowledge to generate better income than basic needs to survive.

Furthermore the fundamental issues, the absence of social security systems in parallel to a poorly developed health care infrastructure, as well as traditional minted thinking, that children are the only way to secure the survival of the elder, lead to high birth-rates. One of the results of this study was family size and expenditure, as one of the fundamentals for human well-being, are counter proportional. Most of the labors of this village have less successful labor market transitions because they have lower higher education level. The children from low level of socio economic survey families are more likely to leave school early and to have difficulties with their studies and display negative attitudes to school. Therefore it has lower retention rates.

Parent may have a low income and a low-status occupation transmit high educational aspirations to their children. Both components social factors and economic factors are important for setting the higher level of their children educational outcomes. Students from non-metropolitan areas are more likely to have lower educational outcomes in terms of academic performance and retention rates than students from metropolitan areas (Cheers, 1990; HREOC, 2000). Affecting factors to education in rural areas include costs, the availability of transport and levels of family income support. Furthermore inequality exists with regard to the quality of the education that rural students receive. Regarding the income generation, most of the households were working agriculture as their main tasks with traditional ways and thinking. One point of less successful income generation is lack of technology for their profession. It is a challenge to develop their life style. They have less recreational and educational attainment.

As positive finding during the survey was the educational sector has significantly improved over the past decade. All scholars today have access to basic and middle school education. Also high school level education can be achieved without relocation. The limitation factors for more extensive use of the educational offering are again the family incomes. Great affords are needed to improve the infrastructure as base for all other progress. This includes in the first step the construction of roads, to enable good transport of goods from one place to another. As important factor is the need to supply electric power to the region and give access to it for all inhabitants. This will ease the supply of freshwater from tube wells for the people and such decrease health risks from late water as cooking and drinking water source. Electric supply will also enable people to pump water from the late and irrigate farmland on the fringe. So the harvests can be improved, such increasing family incomes and reducing the needs to enlarge farmland areas at the expense of protected forests. Higher awareness of the producers has direct impact an income.

Acknowledgment

I want to express my deepest gratitude to Dr. Yi Yi Win, Rector, Co-operative University, Thanlyin, for supporting and providing me the opportunity to study the research paper. I would like to respect and thank to U Oo Tin Thein, Pro-rector; Admin of Co-operative University, Thanlyin and Daw Myint Myint Sein, Pro-rector; Academic of Co-operative University, Thanlyin. I would like to express my heartfelt thanks to Professor Daw Aye Aye Mar, Head of Department of Statistics, Co-operative University, Thanlyin for her supervision and contribution on my study. My warmest thanks are also extended to Head of the village and all of the respondents who kindly spend their times for interviews and provided me with valuable data. Thanks are also extended to my colleagues, friends at the Department of Statistics for their kind cooperation and to all students who helped to get valuable data for this study.

References:

- Cinner, J., "Field Survey Questionnaire- Socioeconomic Aspects of Resource Use and Perception in Mahahual, Quintana Roo, Mexico". (2000). http://www.crc.uri.edu/download/CM_Mahahualquestionnaire.pdf
- Cheers, R., "Rural disadvantage in Australia" *Australian Social Work*, 43 (1), 5-13 (2000)
- Graetz, B., Socio-economic Status in education research and Policy in John Ainley et al., Socio-economic Status and School Education DEET/ACEAR Canberra
- https://nistads.res.in/all-html/Rural%20Development_%20A%20strategy%20for%20poverty%20alleviation%20in%20India.html
- <https://www.irishtimes.com/life-and-style/in-pictures-what-kind-of-country-is-burma-1.1935160>
- http://www.fao.org/fileadmin/templates/ess/documents/meetings_and_workshops/APCAS23/documents_OCT10/APCAS-10-24_Myanmar.pdf
- <http://data.worldbank.org?indicator/SP.RUR.TOTL.ZS>
- <http://www.vdp.drdmyanmar.org/en>
- <http://vdp.drdmyanmar.org/en/about-vdp>
- <http://asiafoundation.org/resources/pdfs/SaemaulUndongReedSept2010FINAL.pdf>
- National Council of Applied Economic Research, New Delhi, "Socio-Economic Survey Households", (2004).
- "Questions on Socio-Economic Status"
- Zinmarthan, "Socio-Economic analysis of the Indawgyi lake area, Monywa Township", A Thesis Paper of the international Master of Environmental Science Program, University of Cologne. (2011)